



3 1761 08713404 5

MACMILLAN'S
ORTER LATIN COURSE

SECOND PART

Cook and Pantin





G. W. Johnston

EX LIBRIS

GEORGII WESLEY JOHNSTON

QUI QUUM EX ANNO A.D. MDCCCCVI

USQUE AD ANNUM MDCCCCXVII

LINGUAE LATINAE IN COLLEGIO

UNIVERSITATIS DOCTOR AUT

PROFESSOR ASSOCIATUS FUISSET

MENSE MAIO A.D. MDCCCCXVII MORTUUS EST

θήκης ἀγάλματ' αἱ πατούμεναι βίβλοι.



MACMILLAN'S
SHORTER LATIN COURSE
SECOND PART



LaL.Gr
C7713ma.2

Cl. Sem.

MACMILLAN'S
SHORTER LATIN COURSE

(SECOND PART

BEING AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE SECOND PART OF
MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE

[Vol. 2]

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.

AND

W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTERS IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

181942
5.7.23

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1904

All rights reserved

First Edition 1894
Reprinted 1896, 1898, 1900, 1902, 1904

PREFACE

It will be well with the issue of the Second Part of this series to state once again what our aims are and by what method we hope to attain them.

We aim at making the first few steps of the student at once more easy to take and more productive of permanent result. It seems to us that it is possible, by following in some respects the method which a child pursues in learning its native language, to make the process of learning Latin easier. A child, for example, uses the little stock of words already acquired over and over again, and only adds a word or two each day. In the same way, we endeavour to make the increase of the vocabulary steady but gradual, so that the student will know or half-know nine-tenths of the words in each exercise, and will have to do comparatively little dictionary work (which is dull), but will be occupied rather in manipulating familiar words (which is interesting). Again, just as a child picks up the various ways in which sentences are put together not so much from explanation as from hearing numberless examples, so we try by constant iteration to accustom the student to the Latin constructions. Of course when these differ

from the English constructions a few words of explanation are necessary, but a few words will generally suffice: it is not desirable at this stage to attempt to classify the constructions or in any way to pursue the study of grammar. It is these constructions which make Latin a very difficult language to read: when once the inflexions have been mastered the vocabulary puts no considerable strain on an English memory: but it requires a prolonged effort to get accustomed to the various uses of the infinitive and subjunctive and participles which have no counterpart in our own language. When the student feels at home with such sentences as *Rogavit quis vicisset* and *Renuntiavit eum, qui vicisset, iam adesse*, so that he is not forced to stop and translate them to himself, he will soon be able to read continuous passages with ease. Our chief object in this volume is to accustom him to such sentences.

The pieces of translation necessarily contain a large proportion of unfamiliar words: they are introduced less with a view to systematic teaching, than in the hope that, being naturally more interesting than detached sentences, they may prove at least a not unprofitable diversion. With many pupils it would certainly be wiser to omit them in first going through the book or to give a good deal of help: otherwise more time and labour will be spent in turning the leaves of the dictionary than would be advisable.

This book is an abridgment of the second part of the longer course. The longer course carries out more fully the principles on which the series is based: but many teachers cannot find the time to use a larger

book, and are forced to carry their pupils over the elementary ground more quickly. We have aimed at making this book as serviceable as possible to such students. The points most fully illustrated are the following: the use of the participles, the accusative and infinitive, the indirect question, *ut, ne, cum, qui* final, *quin*, conditional sentences, continuous oratio obliqua. The exercises have been to a great extent rewritten to suit the requirements of the smaller book.

It should perhaps be added that Part II. of the longer course (1893) was the joint work of us both, and that the appearance of one name only on the title-page of the earlier copies was due to a mistake of the printers.

A. M. C.

W. E. P. P.



CONTENTS

SECT. EXERCISES	PAGE
1. [1, 2.] Irregular Verbs : First Conjugation . . .	1
2. [3, 4.] Do. do. Second Conjugation . . .	2
3. [5, 6.] Formation of Verbs of the Third Conjugation . . .	4
TRANSLATION I. <i>The Philosopher—The Barber</i>	
— <i>An Ingenious Lunatic</i> . . .	5
4. [7, 8.] Irregular Verbs : Fourth Conjugation . . .	6
5. [9, 10.] Do. do. <i>Possum</i> , etc.	7
TRANSLATION II. <i>An Adventure</i>	
6. [11, 12.] Irregular Verbs : <i>Fero</i> , etc.	9
7. [13, 14.] Deponent Verbs	11
8. [15-18.] Participles : <i>Conans</i> , <i>Conatus</i>	12
9. [19-22.] Do. <i>Amatus</i> , <i>Moratus</i>	13
TRANSLATION III. <i>Gyges' Ring</i>	
10. [23-26.] The Ablative Absolute	16
11. [27, 28.] Do. do. (<i>continued</i>)	18
12. [29-31.] <i>Ut</i> , final, with Subjunctive, First and Second Conjugations	19
TRANSLATION IV. <i>Paedagogus—Puer</i>	
13. [32, 33.] <i>Ut</i> , final, with Subjunctive, Third Conjugation	21
14. [34-36.] <i>Ut</i> , final, with Subjunctive, <i>Capio</i> , <i>Facio</i> , etc.	22
15. [37-39.] <i>Ut</i> , final, with Subjunctive, Fourth Conjugation	24
TRANSLATION V. <i>Strange Discovery of a</i> <i>Murderer and Thief</i>	
	25

SECT. EXERCISES	PAGE
16. [40- 48.] Accusative with Infinitive	26
17. [49, 50.] Defective Verbs	30
18. [51, 52.] Impersonal Verbs	31
TRANSLATION VI. <i>The Purchase of the</i> <i>Sibylline Books</i>	31
19. [53- 55.] <i>Ut</i> , expressing a Result	32
20. [56- 59.] The Indirect Question	34
21. [60, 61.] The Supines	36
TRANSLATION VII. <i>Proverbial Sayings</i>	37
22. [62, 63.] The Gerund	38
23. [64, 65.] The Gerundive for the Gerund	39
24. [66, 67.] The Gerundive	40
TRANSLATION VIII. <i>Some Marvellous Stories</i>	41
25. [68, 69.] The Gerundive (<i>continued</i>)	42
26. [70- 72.] Sequence of Tenses	43
27. [73, 74.] Construction of Verbs of Hoping and Promising	46
TRANSLATION IX. <i>Sertorius and the Hind</i>	47
28. [75- 81.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES: Relative and Interrogative— <i>Se</i> and <i>Suus</i>	48
29. [82, 83.] <i>Te ducem facinus</i>	53
30. [84, 85.] <i>Multa me rogavit</i>	54
TRANSLATION X. <i>Fables about India</i>	55
31. [86, 87.] <i>Aliquid cibi</i>	56
32. [88, 89.] The Verb <i>Interest</i>	58
33. [90, 91.] Genitive as Predicate	60
TRANSLATION XI. <i>A Murder at an Inn</i>	61
34. [92, 93.] <i>Si loquitur, si loquetur</i> , etc.	62
[94- 98.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES	64
35. [99, 100.] Dative of Interest— <i>Cum</i> with Subjunctive	66
36. [101, 102.] Dative of Purpose or Effect	68
[103-109.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES	70

Contents

xi

SECT. EXERCISES	PAGE
TRANSLATION XII. <i>Alexander's Speech to his Soldiers</i>	73
37. [110, 111.] Ablative Absolute and <i>Cum</i>	74
38. [112, 113.] Whence? Whither? Where?	76
39. [114, 115.] Ablative of the Agent, Instrument, etc.	78
40. [116, 117.] Unfulfilled Conditions	80
TRANSLATION XIII. <i>Arion and the Dolphin</i>	81
41. [118, 119.] "Some" and "Any"	83
42. [120, 121.] Some Verbs followed by <i>Ut</i>	85
43. [122, 123.] Future Conditions	86
44. [124, 125.] Conditions (<i>continued</i>)	88
45. [126-135.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES on Conditions	89
TRANSLATION XIV. <i>Asking for a Holiday</i>	94
46. [136, 137.] <i>Qui</i> , final	95
47. [138, 139.] <i>Quo</i> , final	97
48. [140, 141.] <i>Quidam</i>	98
TRANSLATION XV. <i>Androclus and the Lion</i>	99
49. [142, 143.] <i>Quominus</i>	101
50. [144, 145.] <i>Quin</i>	103
51. [146, 147.] Verbs of Fearing	105
52. [148, 149.] <i>Dum</i>	106
[150-157.] RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES	107
53. [158-161.] Oratio Obliqua	111
54. [162, 163.] Questions and Commands in Oratio Obliqua	117
TRANSLATION XVI. <i>A True Dream</i>	119
NOTES ON THE PIECES FOR TRANSLATION	123
LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY	134
CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS: <i>Amo, Monco, Rego, Audio;</i> <i>Sum, Possum, Volo, Nolo, Mulo, Fero, Fio, Eo, Capio</i>	161
ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY	177

21

SHORTER LATIN COURSE

SECOND PART

SECTION 1.

IRREGULAR VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

Of the irregular verbs of this conjugation the commonest are *sto*, "I stand," perfect, *stēti*, supine, *statum*; and *do*, "I give," perfect, *dēdi*, supine, *datum*.

Both verbs have many compounds. Among the compounds of *sto* are *praesto*, "I stand before," i.e. "I am superior to," and *circumstare*, "to surround." Among the compounds of *do* the following belong to the third conjugation :—

1. *dēdo*, I give up, surrender; perf. *dēdīdi*; perf. part. pass. *dēdītus*.
reddo, I give back, return; perf. *reddīdi*; perf. part. pass. *reddītus*.
2. *condo*, I put together, found (a city); perf. *condīdi*; perf. part. pass. *condītus*.
perdo, I make away with, I destroy, ruin; perf. *perdīdi*; perf. part. pass. *perdītus*.

- [1.] 1. Mercator regi ingentem pecuniam dederat.
2. Pecunia servo, corona domino a rege data est. 3.
Qui circumstabant milites nuntium audiverunt. 4. Ille

vir ceteris in omnibus rebus praestitit. 5. Romani se et classem suam Carthaginiensibus dederunt. 6. Redde mihi libros, quos tibi heri dedi. 7. Romulus, primus illius gentis rex, urbem Romam condidit. 8. Hi pessimi homines civitatem perdiderunt. 9. Multos homines hae epistulae Ciceronis delectaverunt. 10. Milites trium legionum pro castris instructi sunt.

[2.] 1. The sailors stood round: the king gave money to all. 2. The king had given rewards to the soldiers. 3. The boy amuses the master. 4. To which of the (two) brothers have you given the book? 5. He had founded this great city; he was our first king. 6. The enemy gave themselves up to Caesar. 7. Where is your book?—I gave it to my friend yesterday; he has not returned it. 8. The Carthaginians gave up their fleet and sailors to the Romans. 9. Those bad men have ruined the state. 10. That boy will excel the rest; he is very clever.

SECTION 2.

IRREGULAR VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

It will be remembered that the regular verbs of this conjugation form the perfect active and perfect participle passive thus:—

moneo	monui	monitus	<i>warn</i>
-------	-------	---------	-------------

Among the irregular verbs are:—

doceo	docui	doctus	<i>teach</i>
iubeo	iussi	iussus	<i>order</i>
maneo	mansi	(supine, mansum)	<i>remain</i>
mōveo	mōvi	motus	<i>move</i>
video	vīdi	visus	<i>see</i>

[3.] 1. Magister puerum, novem annos natum, Graecas litteras docuit. 2. Illi pueri, quod¹ optime a magistro docti erant, ceteris praestiterunt. 3. Nonne milites nuntium circumstare vidisti? 4. Milites se hostibus dedere visi sunt: nuntius Caesarem de hac re certiore fecit. 5. Ego et tu semper in eadem sententia mansimus. 6. Oratio regis animos civium moverat; omnes tacuerunt. 7. Ille vir omnium Romanorum doctissimus esse habitus est. 8. Milites, quod¹ nullam spem salutis viderunt, se hostibus dediderunt. 9. Frustra, magister, illos pueros docuisti; tempus perdidisti! 10. Nonne milites ducem circumstare et clamores tollere vidisti?

[4.] 1. Do you not see the ships of war? We will not stay here. 2. The soldiers of the ninth legion were ordered by Caesar to move their camp. 3. That learned man surpassed all the rest. 4. Those boys have been often warned both by their father and their master. 5. The hearts of the citizens were moved by the king's speech. 6. They will be ordered to stand round the master. 7. Your father has not, has he, always maintained his opinion? (Use *num.*) 8. That boy has given the books to his sister; did you not order him to give them to his mother? 9. Caesar ordered the soldiers to build a large number of ships of war. 10. Romulus,² who founded the city (of) Rome, was the first king of the Romans.

¹ *Quod*, because.

² *Romul-us* is, of course, like *domin-us*: proper names are not given in the dictionary, if it is easy to guess what declension they belong to.

SECTION 3.

FORMATION OF VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

These verbs form their parts in many ways. Here, for instance, are specimens:—¹

<i>Present Indicative.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Past Part. Passive.</i>	
dico	dixi	dictus	say
facio	fecit	factus	make
fallo	fefelli	falsus	deceive
gero	gessi	gestus	carry on, do
mitto	misi	missus	send
nosco	novi	notus	get to know
peto	petii (and petivi)	petitus	seek, ask for
pono	posui	positus	place
scribo	scripsi	scriptus	write
solvo	solvi	solutus	undo
verto	verti	versus	turn
vinco	vici	victus	conquer

[5.] 1. Caesar omnes res quae in Hispania gestae sunt cognovit. 2. Romani victi sunt, neque me mea opinio fefellit. 3. Haedui equitatum omnem auxilio Caesari miserant. 4. Quis tecum heri in horto fuit? non novi hominem. 5. Mores Germanorum omnibus hominibus noti sunt. 6. Fratrem tuum bene novi, te vero nunquam antea vidi. 7. Urbs Roma, ut supra scripsimus, a Romulo condita est. 8. Hostes se verterunt et fuga salutem petierunt. 9. Non fefellit Caesarem

¹ Observe that we have English words from all these verbs: dictionary, fact, false, gesture, mission, noted, petition, position, scripture, solution, version, victory. These words will help you to remember the past participles.

hostes fuga salutem petiisse. 10. *Ii se suaque*¹ omnia nobis dederunt.

[6.] 1. Caesar carried on war with all the tribes of Gaul. 2. The soldiers of the fifth legion have been sent to the Parisii. 3. The Romans knew the men who were asking for peace. 4. The Romans carried on war in the territory of the Germans. 5. The soldiers who stood in front of the camp saw the horsemen. 6. The barbarians set sail at midnight. 7. The soldiers of that legion will turn² and seek safety in flight. 8. The Roman leader restored all their hostages to the Haedui. 9. Money is now being paid; peace has been made: hostages have been given. 10. I will write a letter to him: he will not maintain his opinion.

I.

The Philosopher.

Philosophus quidam tantum libris deditus erat ut cetera omnia prorsus ignoraret. Viso puero quodam, dum in via ambulat, quaesivisse dicitur: "Tu, parve puer, quod tibi nomen?" Respondit puer: "At, mi pater, filius tuus ego sum, nomine Octavus." 5

The Barber.

Iam barbam cuiusdam raserat tonsor quaesiveratque num quid eorum quae in tonstrina essent desideraret; unguentorum enim atque optimorum quidem copiam esse maximam. Negavit tamen ille sibi quidquam opus esse, rogavitque: "Quantum tibi me dare oportet?" 5 "Da modo, domine," inquit, "quidquid soles ei qui

¹ *Suaque* = *sua + que*.

² He turns (*i.e.* he turns *himself* round) must be *se vertit*: *verto* is a transitive verb, that is to say, it must be accompanied by an accusative case.

barbam totonderit." "Quid! tibi vulnus in utraque gena vis?" Scilicet suam ipse barbam tondere solitus est, neque novaculā scienter utebatur.

An Ingenious Lunatic.

Medicus, ut solebat, insanos suos visebat. Cum autem insanum quemdam rogasset "Rectene vales, amice?" respondit ille alter "Optime quidem valeo; sed tu, qui me amicum appellare audes, nescis profecto quis sim. Alexander ego Magnus sum." "Nesciebam, fateor; laetor tamen me posse cum tanto viro colloqui. Sed hoc solum mirari licet; nonne tu mihi heri dixisti te Mosem esse?" "Et hoc quidem verum," respondit; "Moses enim alia matre sum."

SECTION 4.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The regular formation is:—

audio	audivi	auditus	<i>hear</i>
-------	--------	---------	-------------

The following are therefore irregular:—

aperio	aperui	apertus	<i>open</i>
vincio	vinxi	vinctus	<i>bind</i>
sentio	sensi	(sup. sensum)	<i>perceive, feel</i>
reperio	repēri	repertus	<i>find</i>
vēnio	vēni	(sup. ventum)	<i>come</i>

Obs. 1. Notice the difference between *vinco*, I conquer, perf. *vici*, part. *victus*, and *vincio* above, I bind.

2. Notice that *vēnit* means "he comes"; *vēnit*, "he has come," "he came." If the quantity is not marked, it is only the sense that will show which tense is meant.

[7.] 1. Et vicit Belgas, et duces eorum vinxit. 2. Ille fenestram aperuit; frigus sensi; iam nox venerat. 3. Fores aperiri sensi, sed neminem vidi. 4. Ne vos quidem, qui circumstetistis, rem sensistis. 5. Reperi esse vera quae mihi servus dixit. 6. Neque frumentum neque flores in agris reperimus. 7. Captivos vinxit et ad Caesarem duxit. 8. Rex hostium vinctus ad Caesarem ductus est. 9. Neque virtute neque consilio vicerunt Romani. 10. Nota est illa vox Caesaris: Veni, vidi, vici.

[8.] 1. Neither my brother nor my sister felt the cold: they were at home. 2. He was not, was he, aware of the matter? Was he not in the city? 3. We found sweet water in the wood. 4. The barbarians opened the gates and gave themselves up. 5. They were bound by the soldiers and sent to the city. 6. The barbarians had conquered not by their bravery but by their strategy. 7. We all came home: we opened the window: we did not see you. 8. We have discovered nothing about that tribe. 9. You have come, seen, and conquered. 10. We will conquer the Gauls: they will not be aware of our approach.

SECTION 5.

IRREGULAR VERBS—(*Continued*).

Possum, *I can*.

Volo, *I wish*.

Nolo, *I am unwilling*.

Malo, *I wish rather*.

These verbs are given on pp. 168-171.

Some of the irregularities of *possum* will be explained by the fact that *possum* is a contraction for *potis-sum*. (*Potissum* is used in the oldest Latin.)

Parts of the present tense of the other three verbs—

volo	vis	vult	volumus	vultis	volunt
nolo	nonvis	nonvult	nolumus	nonvultis	nolunt
malo	mavis	mavult	malumus	mavultis	malunt

show that they are related to one another. *Nolo* is shortened for *ne-volo* (*ne* = *non*), and *malo* for *mae-volo*.

[9.] 1. Num potes omnia quae te magister docuit memoria tenere? 2. Romam quam celerrime potui veni; Balbum videre volui. 3. Neque in silva neque in horto illum florem reperire potuerant. 4. Quaesivit ex me "Gaiumne vidisti?"—Quid respondisti?—"Gaium non novi," respondi. 5. Vis-ne mecum ad summum collem venire?—Volo, sed non possum. 6. "Faciam quod vultis, si potero," respondit Marcus. 7. Ille puer legere quam corpus exercere mavult. 8. Malent cum pauperibus quam cum divitibus vivere. 9. Verum audire volumus, inquit; legistine librum et intellexisti? 10. Noli fuga salutem petere: iam vincere poteris.

[10.] 1. Can you not, boys, remember the things which your father told you? 2. "We cannot come to Rome very quickly," he answered. 3. They could not open the window. 4. Did you wish to come with us to the city?—I wished, but I was not able. 5. "We will do," said he,¹ "what you wish, if we shall be able." 6. He will be unwilling to seek aid from Caesar. 7. He will choose rather to come to the city than to remain at home. 8. He will neither be able nor willing to understand this book. 9. He inquired of me: "You have not seen Caius?" "I have not seen him," I answered. 10. Do not, friends, blame the slave; he could not read what you wrote.

¹ When *he said*, or *said he*, comes after the first few words of a speech, it must be translated by *inquit* not *dixit*.

II.

An Adventure.

Balbus et Gaius, qui, pueri pessimi et audaces, mane aufugerant domo, nocte in deversorio rustico dormiebant. Media autem nocte in cubiculo proximo magnum audiverunt sonitum hominis in terram graviter cadentis gemitusque, et fragorem vitreorum fractorum. Pueri ⁵ (neque mirandum!) multum timebant. At mox sub foribus, quae inter duo cubicula erant, rubrum aliquid lente adfluere viderunt, luna enim clara fuit, vestemque, quam (ut faciunt pueri) temere humi huc illuc deiecerunt, iam attingere. “Sanguis hic est,” dixit Balbus, ¹⁰ “manifestum est occisum esse hominem.” “Quis dubitare potest?” respondit Gaius, “sed nos, pueri miserrimi, cur domo aufuginus? Quid nobis nunc faciendum est? Si enim hic manserimus, ipsi huius facti rei erimus. Quid! nonne vestis sanguine illius hominis maculata ¹⁵ est? Prima utique luce hinc quam celerrime, pecunia soluta, properandum est, si modo fieri potest.”

Mane tamen, dum pecuniam solvunt, venit servus nuntiatque cauponi decidisse noctu de lecto eum qui in illo cubiculo dormiebat amphoramque rubri plenam ²⁰ medicamenti fregisse. Pueri fugitivi, magno liberati timore, domum redeunt, veniam precaturi.

SECTION 6.

IRREGULAR VERBS—(*Continued*).Fero, *I bear.*Fio, *I become.*Eo, *I go.*

These verbs are given on pp. 171-5.

The words which act as perfect and supine of *fero* belong really to another verb.

The verb *fin* acts in some tenses as the passive of *facio*, but *facio* has a perfect passive of its own, *factus sum*.

[11.] 1. Hi homines dolorem fortiter ferre non possunt. 2. Hostes ne unum quidem impetum nostrorum tulerunt. 3. Haec omnia et fert et feret; vir fortis est. 4. Dominus foras it, servus domum redit. 5. Cras ad urbem ibo: nonne tu mecum ibis? 6. Omnia iam vidimus, inquit; domum redeamus. 7. Ubi est frater tuus?—Abiit—Quando redibit?—Nescio. 8. Multi volunt sapientes fieri, pauci fiunt. 9. Nuntii Romam ad Caesarem venerunt et pacem petierunt. 10. Quaesivit ex me: "Librine iam reperti sunt?"

[12.] 1. We are not able to bear such great sufferings. 2. The Gauls did not endure even one charge of the Romans. 3. These things they are bearing, and will bear bravely. 4. That girl becomes more beautiful day by day. 5. Some go to Paris, others to Rome. 6. Who has been made consul?—I do not know. 7. In the winter he will go to the city, and in the spring he will return home. 8. Your brother will not carry everything with him.¹ 9. "It is already time to go away," he said; "let us go!" 10. Balbus is both now bearing these things and will always.

¹ With him, *se-cum*. Observe the difference between *se* and *co* (abl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*) in these two sentences:

(1) *Frater meus secum hoc ferebat.*

My brother used to bring this with him.

(2) *Frater meus cum eo veniebat.*

My brother was coming with him.

In (2) by "him" a second person is clearly meant: in (1) by "him" my brother is meant.

SECTION 7.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Some verbs in Latin are passive in form but active in meaning ; *sequor*, for instance, does not mean "I am followed," but "I follow."

[13.] 1. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur. 2. Caesar eodem itinere ad castra rediit. 3. Multum temporis, inquit, ab illis pueris perditum est. 4. Falsus es, nunquam ego talia locutus sum. 5. "Quis mecum ad summum collem ibit?" dixi ; pauci me sequi voluerunt. 6. Milites frigus graviter tulerunt ; frustra imperator eos hortatus est. 7. Caesar, quod hanc rem graviter tulit, milites ad se adire non est passus. 8. Multae civitates ea patiebantur quae nos passi eramus. 9. "Hostes victi sunt," respondit ; "rex ad castra profectus est." 10. Pessimus es puer : frustra te magister hortatus est, frustra es a patre monitus.

[14.] 1. The general often encourages his soldiers. 2. He has spoken a great many words on this matter. 3. Pompeius set out for Rome by a difficult route. 4. Caesar will set out for Gaul with a part of his forces. 5. Many citizens were following the army. 6. "A few only," he said, "followed me." 7. I encouraged him in vain : he was unwilling to speak. 8. He did not permit his slaves to approach him. 9. We shall set out to-morrow ; you will go with us. 10. I do not permit him to speak ; he shall not answer you.

SECTION 8.

PARTICIPLES.

THE PRESENT ACTIVE AND PAST PASSIVE.

Deponent verbs have the participles of the active as well as of the passive voice :—

conans, *trying*. conatus, *having tried*.

[15.] 1. Milites, redire iussi, ad castra profecti sunt. 2. Segesta est oppidum in Sicilia, quod ab Aenea, fugiente a Troia atque in haec loca veniente, conditum est. 3. Germanos, flumen transire conantes, adoriebantur. 4. Equites contra hostes euntes vidimus. 5. Eum frustra loqui conantem servi, a domino iussi, vinxerunt. 6. Nos, contra regem bellum gerentes, multa mala passi sumus. 7. Puer, a patre missus, media nocte ad oppidum venit. 8. Milites e castris proficiscentes hostes adorti sunt. 9. A flumine progredientes hostes adorti sumus. 10. Frater, ad oppidum iens, amicum tuum redeuntem vidit.

[16.] 1. The citizens saw the king coming. 2. Having tried to escape, he was bound by the soldiers. 3. I saw the boy standing in the water. 4. We saw the slave escaping to the temple. 5. Seeking gold, we have found stones. 6. We heard the soldiers returning from the camp. 7. The boy being unwilling to follow, remained at home. 8. Did you see my friend going to the city? 9. They attacked the soldiers returning to their camp. 10. The soldier returning to the camp saw nothing.

It will have been found, in translating sentence 10, for instance, of the preceding Latin exercise, No. 15, that it is better to say, "As my brother was going to the town he saw your friend returning," than "My brother going to the town saw," etc. So in the follow-

ing exercise such English phrases can be turned by the use of the present participle in Latin.

[17.] 1. The horseman, quickly following, came in time. 2. As my friend was going to Rome he saw you returning. 3. Segesta was founded by Aeneas as he was escaping from Troy. 4. He attacked the Gauls as they were trying to cross. 5. I saw the army as it was returning to the camp. 6. They bound him, vainly endeavouring (as he was) to answer. 7. We attacked the enemy as they were setting out from the camp. 8. While carrying on war in Gaul we suffered much. 9. We saw your sister as she was returning home with her mother. 10. Having spoken, he went away to the city.

[18.] 1. The soldiers, having been ordered to follow, set out. 2. The travellers, having been warned by their friend, returned by another route. 3. The enemy, having been conquered, asked for peace. 4. The boy came to us, sent by his father. 5. The soldiers as they were returning from the battle raised a shout. 6. The captives were sent bound to the king. 7. Having been conquered ourselves,¹ we now are conquering others. 8. We shall attack the enemy as he is advancing to the river. 9. The general, having encouraged his soldiers, advanced. 10. Did you not see the soldiers advancing to the enemy's camp?

SECTION 9.

PARTICIPLES—(*Continued*).

THE PAST PARTICIPLE DEPONENT AND PASSIVE.

There is an awkward want in Latin of a past participle of the active voice. "Having loved," for example, has

¹ *Ipsi*.

no direct Latin equivalent, but must be turned in some roundabout way. The passive voice, on the other hand, has this participle; "having *been* loved" is *amatus*.

Some few verbs, however, as we saw in the last section, have this past participle active, namely, deponent verbs. "Having followed" is *secutus*.

"Having" or "having been" will not always be the most suitable English for the past participle deponent or passive. In the first sentence below say "after delaying;" and in the following, "though ordered," "because he delayed," "if she is ordered;" so in 5 non expectans, "without waiting for."

[19.] 1. Ibi diu morati, tandem proficisci constituerunt. 2. Puer, proficisci iussus, domi moratus est. 3. Gaius, diu domi moratus, tempore non venit. 4. Iussa filia ad matrem ibit. 5. Frater me non expectans domum iit. 6. Ille libros antea frustra quaesitos reperit. 7. Amici mei domum redeuntes a militibus capti sunt. 8. Captivos vinxit; vinctos ad regem duxit. 9. Castra hostium ante oppidum posita vidit. 10. Puellam de adventu fratris certiores fecimus. Illa certior facta statim venit.

[20.] 1. Having set out in the morning, they returned home in the evening. 2. Having advanced for a long time, he came to a river. 3. Having attacked the Gauls, we went back to the camp. 4. Having encouraged his soldiers, he ordered (them) to set out. 5. Having been often deceived by that man, I cannot praise him. 6. Having been informed¹ of the arrival of the legions, the general set out. 7. Having suffered worse things, I can suffer this. 8. Having delayed a

¹ I inform Caius of the matter, *Gaium de re certiores facio* (literally, I make him more certain about the matter); Caius has been informed, *Gaius certior factus est*.

long time at Rome, we wished to return. 9. Having tried in vain to advance, they surrendered themselves to the enemy. 10. The soldiers, having been informed of the king's death, raised a shout.

[21.] 1. *After delaying* (i.e. having delayed) a long while at Rome, they were unwilling to return home. 2. *Though ordered* (i.e. having been ordered) to go, they delayed there. 3. Why have you come to me?—I come *because I was sent* (i.e. having been sent) by my mother. 4. *If ordered* (i.e. having been ordered), the slave will come to you at once. 5. Having attacked the enemy, they returned to their camp. 6. Being informed of the arrival of the ship, he came to the river. 7. *Because he had delayed* (i.e. having delayed) there a long time, he determined to return at once. 8. *After attacking* (i.e. having attacked) the cavalry, they advanced to the town. 9. *As I have been ordered* (i.e. having been ordered) to see everything, I shall delay for a few days in this city. 10. *After encouraging* (i.e. having encouraged) the soldiers, he determined to advance.

[22.] 1. After advancing three miles we came to the enemy's camp. 2. Having in vain tried to understand the book, we gave *it* back. 3. We were not able to find the book, though we tried often. 4. After being conquered we have conquered. 5. We did not see the king, though we delayed in the city for many days. 6. Ordered to return, he set out at once. 7. After their defeat¹ the Germans gave themselves up. 8. I did not understand though I tried. 9. We did not come in time, because we delayed at Tarentum. 10. After I had set out I was informed of your arrival.

¹ *I.e.* having been conquered.

III.

Gyges' Ring.

Gyges, cum terra discessisset magnis quibusdam imbris, descendit in illum hiatum, aeneumque equum, ut ferunt fabulae, animadvertit, cuius in lateribus fores erant: quibus apertis, hominis mortui vidit corpus
 5 magnitudine inusitata, anulumque aureum in digito: detractum ipse induit. Tum se ad pastores (erat autem regius pastor) recepit. Ibi, cum palam eius anuli ad palmam converterat, a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat; idem rursus videbatur, cum in
 10 locum anulum inverterat. Itaque, hac opportunitate anuli usus, regem dominum interemit, sustulitque quos obstare arbitrabatur: nec in his eum facinoribus quisquam potuit videre. Sic repente anuli beneficio rex exortus est Lydiae.

SECTION 10.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The construction called "the Ablative Absolute" serves, to some extent, to make up for the want of a past participle of the active voice. The English, "Caesar, having settled this matter, returned to the camp," cannot go straight into Latin, because *constitutus*, the past participle of *constituo*, is passive, and means "having been settled." But it can be turned into Latin in this way, *Caesar, hac re constituta, ad castra rediit*—that is, "Caesar, this matter having been settled, returned to the camp."

[23.] 1. Gallis victis, Romam redire possumus. 2. Pater, his rebus constitutis, non moratus est. 3. His

rebus cognitis, hostes adorti sunt. 4. Castris in colle positis, equites expectavit. 5. Amicus, nuntio audito, morari noluit et domum rediit. 6. Equites in colle positi hostes expectabant. 7. Mater, lecta filii epistula, rem graviter tulit. 8. Servi, opere confecto, domum redire constituerunt. 9. Gaius, servis sequi iussis, rus est profectus. 10. Romani, castris motis, hostes saepe adorti sunt.

[24.] 1. The messenger having been heard, they moved their camp. 2. This matter having been settled, we were unwilling to set out. 3. Having learnt these facts, we did not delay (any) longer. 4. Having delivered this speech, Caesar returned home. 5. The father, having read his son's letter, did not delay. 6. Balbus, having ordered his slaves to follow, went away to the country. 7. The friends, having finished the task, wrote many letters. 8. Not having given back the money, they did not want to come back. 9. Having ordered his slaves to stay, he set out with his sons. 10. Having bound all the prisoners, he ordered the soldiers to set out.

[25.] 1. Pueri, his rebus confectis, in agris se exercebant. 2. Barbari, urbe capta, ad colles fugerunt. 3. Caesar, his rebus constitutis, naves omnes redire iussit. 4. Frater meus, bello confecto, domum rediit. 5. His libris lectis tecum in urbem ire volo. 6. Commisso praelio nostrorum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt. 7. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi, ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. 8. Imperator, dimissis Haeduorum copiis, praelium commisit. 9. Victi barbari pacem petebant. 10. Victis barbaris flumen transiimus, ad urbem rediimus.

[26.] 1. When the war is finished, we shall all return home. 2. Our men, after vainly attacking the enemy,

ran to the ships. 3. When I have written the letter, I will go with you to the city. 4. The general, after encouraging his soldiers, ordered them to attack the enemy. 5. I gave back the money¹ and ran home. 6. The enemy having been conquered did not dare to return. 7. When he saw the horsemen he ordered all his soldiers to follow. 8. The barbarians, after having yesterday in vain tried to follow, will remain in their camp to-day. 9. As we have determined on war, why do we delay (any) longer? 10. Having advanced to the river, they attacked our men.

SECTION 11.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—(*Continued*).

The construction of the Ablative Absolute is used also with other participles, with adjectives, and with a few nouns. For instance: *illo absente* means "He being absent," *i.e.* "in his absence," "while he was away;" *patre vivo*, "my father being alive," "in my father's lifetime," "while my father was alive;" *te iudice*, "you being judge," "in your judgment."

[27.] 1. *Te duce, hostem non timebimus; omnia facere poterimus.* 2. *Me iudice, illi pueri bene responderunt.* 3. *Me invito, non poteris fenestram aperire.* 4. *Pueris nobis, boni mores in honore erant.* 5. *His consulibus, Romani ab Hannibale victi sunt.* 6. *Patre vivo, Romae viximus.* 7. *Et me et te invitissimo hoc fiet.* 8. *Milites, absente Caesare, castra in campo posuerunt.* 9. *Matre invita Romae diutius manere non potui.* 10. *Invitus te fefelli. Nemo me de hac re certiore fecerat.*

[28.] 1. Under your leadership, we have both con-

¹ Say, Having given back the money I ran home.

quered and been conquered. 2. In my judgment, the slave answered very well. 3. If your father is unwilling, you will not be able to go to the city. 4. In the absence of their master the boys were never silent. 5. As our mother is unwilling, we cannot come to-day. 6. As your brother is away, will you not come with us? 7. When these (men) were consuls, Carthage was taken by the Romans. 8. In his judgment, your sister bore her pain bravely. 9. This thing was done in our absence. 10. As both father and mother are away I cannot answer; I will write to-morrow.

SECTION 12.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: UT.

THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

Do ut des, *I give that you may give.*

Dedi ut dares, *I gave that you might give.*

That, when it means "in order that," or, in other words, when it expresses a purpose, is translated by the conjunction *ut*, and the following verb is put in the subjunctive mood.

Ut may also be translated by "to." "I came that I might help you" and "I came to help you" mean the same thing, and may be translated by *Veni ut te adiuverem*.

But in turning into Latin this "to" of the purpose, care must be taken as to the tense of the following verb in the subjunctive. "He sent the boys to see the city," that is, in other words, "that they *might* see;" so "Pueros misit, ut urbem *viderent*."

[29.] 1. Venite statim, ut me in hac re adiuvetis. 2. Ut te videam, cras proficisci volo. 3. Ut valeret, corpus exercebat. 4. Nos ad urbem imus, ut vos domi maneatis. 5. Cur tibi hoc dixi? nonne ut memoria semper teneres? 6. Scripta epistula servum misit ut filia statim certior fieret. 7. Impedimentis in oppido relictis, in campum profecti sumus. 8. Omnia feci, ut fratrem adiuverem. 9. Noli timere: talia dicit ut terrearis. 10. Nobis absentibus profectus est, ut bellum videret.

[30.] 1. Come, my brother, that you may help me! 2. He praised the horsemen, that he might be loved by the general. 3. I went to the camp that I might see my friends. 4. They will set out at midnight, that they may alarm the barbarians. 5. I came to you, that you might help me in this matter. 6. He says this that we may be afraid. 7. That you may be well, take exercise often. 8. I am going to the city that I may pay the money. 9. I told you this often that you might always retain it in your memory. 10. Having left the baggage in the camp, we set out, that we might warn the citizens of the approach of the Gauls.

[31.] 1. He sent two legions in order that the citizens might be alarmed. 2. He said this that he might be considered wise. 3. I said this to encourage the soldiers. 4. He has left a large part of the baggage in the camp. 5. He sent the slaves to warn their master. 6. He ordered the boys to be silent that he might teach them. 7. Having done these things, we set out to see the city. 8. While you were away we went to the city to give the book to Caius. 9. He did this that he might seem useful to the state. 10. He often moves his camp in order to exercise his soldiers.

IV.

Paedagogus—Puer.

Paed. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties adloquitur te quispiam cui debes honorem, aperi caput, sint oculi intenti in eum cui loqueris, iuncti pedes, quietae manus. Nunc age specimen aliquod huius rei nobis praebe. ⁵
Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus?

Puer. Iam sex ferme menses.

Paed. Addendum erat "domine."

Puer. Iam sex ferme menses, domine.

Paed. Nonne cupis matrem revisere? 10

Puer. Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat tua.

Paed. Nunc flectendum est genu. Bene habet. In convivio autem postremus omnium admoveto manum patinae. Si quid datur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe, et adde ¹⁵ gratias. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto cyathum labiis. Arride loquentibus; ipse ne quid locutus sis nisi rogatus. Si videris convivium esse prolixius, precatus veniam ac salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide ut horum ²⁰ memineris.

Puer. Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor. Num quid aliud vis?

Paed. Adi nunc libros tuos.

Puer. Fiet.

SECTION 13.

UT, FINAL—(*Continued*).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: THIRD CONJUGATION.

- [32.] 1. Ad te scribo, ut omnem timorem tollam.
2. Veni ad te, ut pecuniam debitam solverem. 3. Haec

ad te scripsi, ut omnes has res statim constitueres. 4. Cur venisti? ut a me auxilium peteres? 5. Quo¹ ibis, mea soror?—Ibo ad hortum ut flores carпам. 6. Floribus carptis, ibo ad urbem, ut fratrem videam. 7. Ad flumen ierunt, ut naves hostium incenderent. 8. His rebus cognitis statim redii, ut tecum loquerer. 9. Naves mox solventur, ut nautae hostes sequantur. 10. Libris relictis statim ad me veni ut cras proficiscamur.

[33.] 1. I am gathering flowers in order to help my mother. 2. I came to give you back your book. 3. They are going to the harbour to set fire to all the enemies' ships. 4. The ships having been set fire to, they will return to burn the town. 5. I will give you the book to-day, that you may read it to-morrow. 6. They went to the harbour to see the sailors and the ships. 7. Did you come to see the ships?—I came to see you. 8. I wrote these words that you might understand the speech. 9. They went to the river to follow the others. 10. I did this that my words might be read by all.

SECTION 14.

UT, FINAL—(Continued).

THIRD CONJUGATION: CAPIO, FACIO, ETC.

Certain verbs ending in *-io* form the infinitive present in *-ere* and imperfect subjunctive in *-erem*. *Facio* is one of these. "To make" is *facere*; I might make, *facërem*. Others of these verbs are, the compounds of *facio*, *interficio*, *conficio*, etc.; *capio*, and its compounds, *accipio*, *decipio*, *incipio*, *recipio*; and *iacio*. The deponents *morior*, *patior*, *progredior*, in the same way form these tenses

¹ Quo, whither? where . . . to?

according to the third conjugation : *mori, morereri ; pati, patereri ; progredi, progrederi*.

Cāpio is conjugated on pp. 175-6.

[34.] 1. Nuntios miserunt, ut Caesarem de his rebus certiores facerent. 2. His rebus factis ad urbem ibo, ut opus conficiam. 3. Non est verum ; hoc dixit, ut te deciperet. 4. Cur fugitis, milites ? Mori melius est quam fugere. 5. Impedimenta in castris reliquit, ut ad oppidum celeriter progrediretur. 6. Quid ! num oratorem culpas ? nonne populus vult decipi ? 7. Paucos milites in colle ponit, ut lapides in hostes iaciant. 8. Domi paucos dies moratus, ad urbem rediit, ut opus conficeret. 9. Nonne talia patiemur ut domum redeamus ? 10. Pessimum hominem interficimus ut turpes terreantur.

[35.] 1. We will send a messenger to inform the general of these matters. 2. The war having been finished, we will return home to see our friends. 3. Did you say that to deceive me and others ? 4. We will go to Caesar, to get back our hostages. 5. To die is better than to live.—You are not well. 6. A few soldiers were posted on the hills to throw stones on the enemy. 7. Some came to see the king, others to see the orator. 8. Why did you not come to finish your work ? 9. I came to give you this little book. 10. That he might die alone, he remained in the wood.

[36.] 1. We suffer much that our friends may love us. 2. I write to you in order that I may receive a letter from you. 3. He remained at home the whole day to finish the work. 4. He spoke these words to deceive the soldiers. 5. The sailors are going to the harbour to inform their leader. 6. They set sail in the morning in order that they might reach land before night. 7. When we have finished the task we will go to the town to see the soldiers. 8. The ambassadors

said this to deceive Caesar. 9. My brother, who came yesterday, will go to-morrow to Rome to see you. 10. Having heard the speech, they advanced to take the town.

SECTION 15.

UT, FINAL—(*Continued*).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Do not use *ut non*, but instead *ne*. So *Abiit ne videretur*, "He went away that he might not be seen;" or, "not to be seen;" or, "lest he should be seen."

[37.] 1. Ad urbem omnes venimus, ut oratorem audiremus. 2. Nocte e castris progressi sumus, ne hostes sentirent. 3. Legiones pro castris instruxit, ne hostes subito adorirentur. 4. Fessus sum, amice; domum redibo, ut dormiam. 5. Captivos omnes interfici iussit, ut celeriter progredere-mur. 6. Pauci, relictis equis, flumen transire conati sunt, ut ceteros adiuvarent. 7. In hortum eo, ut librum reperiam.—Non reperies. 8. His rebus cognitis milites ex urbe duxit, ne omnes interficerentur. 9. Nuntios mitte, ut consul de his rebus certior fiat. 10. Rem non debes graviter ferre, ne omnibus decipi videaris.

[38.] 1. We will all go into the woods to hear the birds. 2. We will not sleep, lest the enemy attack us. 3. They give back the captives, that they may not be impeded on the march. 4. They advanced to help the cavalry when they heard this. 5. I will write to you often, that I may receive many letters from you. 6. I will go into the garden to find your friend. 7. They were reading books, that they might not seem to be doing nothing. 8. The soldiers returned to their camp, that they might not be taken by the enemy. 9. Having

left their baggage in the camp, they set out to follow the cavalry. 10. They raised a shout, that they might be heard by the enemy.

[39.] 1. If you are unwilling, I will not go to see the soldiers. 2. We followed the soldiers in order that we might be able to see the battle. 3. They were raising shouts in order that the words of the orator might not be heard. 4. I went to the city to inform the consul of the matter. 5. We will go ourselves to the camp, lest we be deceived. 6. They will leave their baggage in the camp, lest they be impeded on the march. 7. He went into the woods, that he might not be sent into the city. 8. They sent the slave to pay the money at once. 9. We will not go into the camp, lest the soldiers throw their darts at us.¹ 10. I will follow the slave, whom I sent into the city, lest he deceive me.

V.

Strange Discovery of a Murderer and Thief.

Strato medicus domi furtum fecit et caedem eius modi. Erat in aedibus armarium, in quo sciebat esse nummorum aliquantum. Noctu duos conservos dormientes occidit in piscinamque deiecit. Ipse armarii fundum exsecuit, et nummos abstulit uno ex servis⁵ puero non grandi conscio. Furto postridie cognito, omnis suspicio in eos servos qui non comparebant commovebatur. Cum tamen exsecutio illa fundi in armario animadverteretur, quaerebant homines quonam modo fieri potuisset. Quidam ex amicis domini record-¹⁰ atus est se nuper in auctione vidisse in rebus minutis serrulam formae inusitatae, qua illud potuisse ita circumsecari videretur. Ne multa: perquiritur a coac-

¹ At us, in nos.

toribus ; invenitur ea serrula ad Stratonem pervenisse.
 15 His rebus inventis et aperte insimulato Stratone, puer
 ille conscius pertinuit ; rem omnem dominae indicavit ;
 homines in piscina inventi sunt ; Strato in vincula
 coniectus est, atque etiam in taberna eius nummi,
 nequaquam omnes, reperiuntur.

SECTION 16.

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

It has been seen that the word *that* is translated into Latin by *ut*, when the *that* means *in order that*. In such a sentence as "He said that his mother was not well," it is plain that *that* does not mean *in order that* ; and it is differently turned in Latin. The "that" has no Latin word, the following noun is put into the accusative case, and the following verb into the infinitive mood. The Latin, then, will be *Dixit matrem non valere*. In the following sentence both kinds of "that" occur. "He said that he was not well, that he might not be sent into the city," *that he* will be *se*, *that . . . not* will be *ne* : *dixit se non valere, ne in urbem mitteretur*.

[40.] 1. Scio eum iam profectum esse. 2. Dixit patrem suum et matrem mortuos esse. 3. Nego me a te deceptum esse : spes tua te fefellit. 4. Promittit se tempore rediturum esse. 5. Negat se me invito epistulam scripturum. 6. Nonne audivisti Romulum primum populi Romani regem fuisse. 7. Alii dicunt, alii negant, nostros vicisse. 8. Spero te patre invito non venturum. 9. Simulavit se valere, ne rus abire iuberetur. 10. Certiorem me fecerunt nostros ab hostibus victos esse.

[41.] 1. I know that he is writing a letter (say, I know him to be writing . . .) 2. They said that they

had already answered. 3. He promises that he will give back the book. 4. I hope that you will set out to-morrow. 5. He pretends that he is teaching his brother. 6. He said that he had often heard the orator. 7. The messenger pretends that the queen is dead. 8. He denied that he had received your letter. 9. They deny that they have seen the soldiers. 10. They pretend that they are unwilling to speak.

The English sentence "He said that he saw the house" may mean two things. It may mean that he said "I see the house" or "I saw the house" some time in the past. If it means "I see," the Latin should be *videre*; if "I saw," *vidisse*.

[42.] 1. I am well. He told me that he was well. 2. I wrote a long letter yesterday. He said that he wrote a long letter yesterday. 3. I am not willing to set out for Gaul. 4. He said that he was not willing to set out for Gaul. 5. He came to my house to deceive me. 6. I informed the judge that Caius came to my house to deceive me. 7. Having conquered the enemy, I am loved by the citizens. 8. He said that, having conquered the enemy, he was loved by the citizens. 9. I shall set sail to-morrow. 10. He said that he would set sail to-day.

[43.] 1. He pretended that he was often at Rome. 2. He said that he wrote five letters yesterday. 3. They denied that they had been deceived. 4. He pretended that he was following the army. 5. He said that he had deceived his enemy. 6. The general pretended that he had conquered the enemy. 7. They said that they saw your brother yesterday. 8. We all hope that you will come to us. 9. He said that he knew everything. 10. He said that he had conquered the enemy in Gaul.

[44.] 1. He said that some were dying, others were already dead. 2. We will inform the king that the leader of the barbarians has moved¹ his camp and crossed the river. 3. Do not pretend that you know my father. 4. Have you not heard that Romulus founded the city of Rome? 5. Why did you pretend that you loved me? 6. I hope that you will find what you lost. 7. When I had advanced two miles, I perceived that the messenger had deceived me. 8. I think that the boy will make the same inquiry of you. 9. He put the book down² and went away to take exercise. 10. Is it true that you want to come to Paris?

[45.] 1. He prefers to believe that he has been deceived by me. 2. But you understand that I have never deceived your father. 3. You know that the wicked Balbus came to your house in your absence. 4. Do you not believe that he removed the money in order that I might be blamed? 5. I have always been aware that you were a friend to me. 6. Do not now help my enemy, lest men say that you have deceived your friend. 7. I wish you to be good, that you may become like your father. 8. He pretended to understand us, that he might be considered wise. 9. This done, we shall be able to sleep. 10. Having tried in vain to escape, they surrendered themselves to our men.

[46.] 1. Why do you pretend to be foolish? I know that you understand very well. 2. Why have you come to me? I have come to get back the money, which I gave you. 3. Did I promise that I would return you the money when the task was finished? 4. Why do you deny that you promised? Do you think that I believe you? 5. With me for consul you con-

¹ Use a participle : having moved his camp, has crossed, etc.

² Having put the book down, he went away, etc.

quered your enemies: when those men were consuls the state suffered much. 6. When you have written your letters come into the garden to me. 7. Let us run to the woods to pick flowers. 8. Have you not heard that our men have been defeated, our general slain? 9. When we saw the horsemen, we sought safety in flight. 10. We will open the window, that we may hear the orator speaking.

[47.] 1. Having spoken these words, they fled to the hills. 2. Having said this he went away to look for the book. 3. I hope that you will find the letter which I wrote. 4. To alarm his mother he raised a shout. 5. The horsemen posted on the hill could not see the enemy. 6. The horsemen being posted on the hill, the enemy could not advance. 7. In my judgment he lived well and died bravely. 8. We will inform your mother that you could not read her letter. 9. I was not so foolish as to tell him that you had gone away to the country. 10. Why were you pretending to be well?—In order that I might return to the city at once.

[48.] 1. Did you tell your brother that I wish to set sail? 2. I said what you ordered me to say. He answered that he preferred to remain at home. 3. They promised that they would send all the books to-day. 4. When I had heard the messenger I ran to the camp to inform the general of the matter. 5. When shall we set out?—The general hopes that we shall start at midnight. 6. After following the defeated enemy for three miles, we returned to the camp. 7. I have promised that I will write to my mother every day. 8. I know that he has ordered the horsemen to remain in the harbour, that they may help the sailors. 9. I do not believe that he knows me. 10. When he is informed of this matter, he will understand that we did not suffer in vain.

SECTION 17.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Some verbs have lost their present tense and tenses formed from it, and have only the perfect and tenses formed from the perfect. *E.g. coepi*, I began; *odi*, I hate; *memini*, I remember.

Notice also that the two latter verbs have present meanings with the perfect form.

[49.] 1. *Memini me promisisse; ad diem veniam.* 2. *Ne cives ab oratore deciperentur, Gaius dicere coepit.* 3. *Quis mecum Londinium ibit? non novi viam.* 4. *Memineram te in eadem sententia manere.* 5. *Scio Gallos saepe a Romanis victos esse.* 6. *Pater meus negavit se illam rem meminisse.* 7. *Dixit se neque hunc hominem neque illum odisse.* 8. *Novi hominem et scio eum pessimum civem semper fuisse.* 9. *Num tu mei oblitus es? Cur nunquam ad meas epistulas respondes?* 10. *Semper meminero te me in illa re adiuvisse.*

[50.] 1. Then his brother began to say that he was unwilling. 2. I remember that he died on that day. 3. Do you not remember that I hate that man? 4. I promise that I will remain there all day. 5. He pretends that he has already answered. 6. Do you not hope that the Romans have already conquered? 7. When you have done this, remember that I shall be in the garden. 8. I said this that he should not think me unwilling. 9. He began to write in order that having finished the work he might go into the woods. 10. Why did you pretend that you were not well? You did not hope that you would deceive me?

SECTION 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Many verbs are used only in the third person singular (and in the infinitive and gerund). *Pluit*, it rains ; *licet mihi ire*, it is permitted me to go, *i.e.* I may go ; *oportet me ire*, it behoves me to go, *i.e.* I ought to go.

[51.] 1. *Pluit, Balbe ; neque hodie ad urbem ire poterimus.* 2. *Ubi est frater meus?—Te oportet hoc scire.* 3. *Ne haec nescirent, statim scribere coepit.* 4. *Opere facto licebit tibi in hortum ire.* 5. *Credo te fratrem meum novisse.—Et novi et amo tuum fratrem.* 6. *Neque possum tecum ire, neque (mihi crede) me oportet.* 7. *Nonne mihi licet inimicos odisse?* 8. *Ne inimicos quidem (mihi crede) odisse debemus.* 9. *Nonne nos oportet patrem de his rebus certiore facere?* 10. *Nonne mihi licet in hortum ire, ut flores carпам?*

[52.] 1. Why does it always rain? I shall not be able to go into the garden to-day. 2. You ought to remember this. I¹ was not present. 3. We ought to inform Caesar of all matters. 4. You may go to Rome: return when your business is finished. 5. Why may I not see this house? 6. He will return, I believe, that he may receive the money. 7. We ought to remember these matters. 8. May I not tell my father these things? 9. He said that he did not know all the citizens. 10. You may not go, lest you die on the march.

VI.

The Purchase of the Sibylline Books.

In antiquis annalibus memoria de libris Sibyllinis haec prodita est. Anus, hospita atque incognita, ad

¹ Put in *ego*, as it is emphatic.

Tarquinius Superbum regem adiit, novem libros ferens, quos esse dicebat divina oracula; eos velle dixit vendere. Tarquinius pretium percontatus est. Mulier
5 nimium atque immensum poposcit; rex, quasi anus aetate desiperet, derisit. Tum illa foculum coram cum igni apponit, tres libros ex novem deurit, et ecquid reliquos sex eodem pretio emere vellet, regem inter-
10 rogavit. Sed Tarquinius id multo risit magis, dixitque anum iam procul dubio delirare. Mulier ibidem statim tres alios libros exussit, atque id ipsum denuo placide rogat, ut tres reliquos eodem illo pretio emat. Tar-
15 quinius ore iam serio atque attentiore fit; eam constantiam confidentiamque non contemnendam intellegit; libros tres reliquos mercatur nihilo minore pretio quam quod erat petatum pro omnibus. Sed eam mulierem, tunc a Tarquinio digressam, postea nusquam visam constitit. Libri tres, in sacrarium conditi, Sibyl-
20 lini appellati. Ad eos, quasi ad oraculum, quinde- cimviri adeunt, cum di immortales publice consulendi sunt.

SECTION 19.

UT, EXPRESSING A RESULT.

Besides translating "that" when it expresses a purpose, *ut* will also translate it when it expresses a result. In other words, *ut* means not only "in order that," but also "so that."

When a "not" followed *ut* meaning "in order that," *ut non* was not to be put, but *ne*. But when *ut* means "so that," *ne* is not used, but *ut non*.

Observe therefore that the English word "that," according to its different meanings, will want different Latin. Of course when "that" is a pronoun, *ille* is the Latin; *ille puer* is "that boy." But, besides this, the

conjunction "that" may in different senses either require the accusative with infinitive, or *ut*, or *ne*.

Dixit se Gaium vidisse, He said that he saw Caius (*i.e.* he said, "I saw Caius").

Abiit ne Gaium videret, He went away that he might not see Caius.

Abiit tam mane ut Gaium non videret, He went away so early in the morning that he did not see Caius.

[53.] 1. Tanta est eius diligentia, ut totum opus brevi tempore confecerit. 2. Non sum tam ignarus, ut nesciam Romam a Romulo conditam esse. 3. Dixit se tot tamque pulchros flores nunquam antea vidisse. 4. Tantus fuit hostium timor, ut tantis copiis tam parvam manum adoriri non auderent. 5. Qui fit ut opus nondum confectum sit? 6. Tantus est numerus librorum vitæque tam brevis est, ut paucos solum legere possimus. 7. Tali consilio capto, cum duabus legionibus statim est profectus. 8. Non te oportet Gaium odisse; tibi enim tot in rebus adfuit. 9. Tecum ibimus ut tantum oratorem audiamus. 10. Romam ivit ut libros manu scriptos videat. Ita fit ut domi non sit.

[54.] 1. I am going away that I may not see the soldiers. 2. That is how it comes about that I cannot see the soldiers. 3. He said that he had never seen so many soldiers before. 4. No one is so ignorant that he does not know that the Germans have conquered. 5. The number of the enemy is so great that we cannot conquer. 6. You ought to go that you may not be blamed. 7. The plan is of such a kind that I cannot praise it. 8. How does it come about that your father is not present? 9. They are reading the book with such great diligence that they cannot hear us. 10. They are reading the book with such great diligence that they may be praised.

[55.] 1. That is how it happened that I determined to return. 2. No one is so ignorant that he believes you. 3. How does it come about that I am not allowed to return home? 4. The life of men is so short that they cannot finish many things. 5. I set out in the morning that I might return in the evening. 6. That is how it happened that you came in my absence. 7. So great was the fear of all that no one dared to speak. 8. These books are of such a kind that I cannot understand them. 9. So great was the number of the boys that the master could not teach all. 10. Nobody is so foolish that he can understand nothing.

SECTION 20.

THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Quid¹ est? *What is it?* (Direct question.)
 Dic quid sit, *Tell me what it is.* (Indirect question.)
 Rogavit quid esset, *He asked what it was.* (Indirect question.)

Notice that the effect of putting the *dic* and *rogavit* before the question, is to turn the *est* into the subjunctive mood.

2. Num fessus es, *You are not tired, are you?* (Direct question.)
 Rogavit num fessus essem, *He asked me whether I was tired.* (Indirect question.)

Notice here that in the second sentence *num* merely means "whether," and does not, as in direct questions, suggest the answer "No."

¹ *Quis? Quid?* mean who? what? (interrogative). *Qui, quae, quod* are relative, *e.g.*

Quis venit? Who is coming?

Is, qui venit, nihil timet, The man who is coming fears nothing.

[56.] 1. Dic, puer, quis sis.—Balbus sum. 2. Heus tu, quid agis?—Rogasne quid agam? Nihil ago. 3. Rogavit me quot flores emissem, quot vendidissem. 4. Epistula tua ita scripta erat, ut legere non possem. 5. Ex eo quaesivi quanti haec vendidisset; respondere noluit. 6. Quis tibi hoc dixit?—Ille servus quem ad me misisti. 7. Rogo te quid oportuerit me facere. 8. Ex eo quaeram num promiserit se me docturum. 9. Gaius, quem heri vidisti, me rogavit num tibi frater esset.¹ 10. Hi dicunt quod illi negant; neque possum reperire quid in illa re factum sit.

[57.] 1. Who are you?—He asks who I am. 2. For how much did you buy these things?—I would rather not say. 3. Tell me why you have returned to Rome. 4. I ask you whether you have sold my property in my absence. 5. He often asked me whether you were well. 6. What did you answer?—That you were very well. 7. What is it, Titus?—I ask you where you have put my book. 8. I wish to know whether you have finished the task. 9. He asked me whether I had sold all my books. 10. I ask you whether the task has been finished.

[58.] 1. In your absence I don't know what I ought to do. 2. He asked me why I kept silence. 3. You, who were present, can say whether he is well. 4. I do not know whether I may sell these things. 5. Inquire of the general himself whether he has conquered the enemy. 6. Did he not ask whether I were well? 7. You did not answer, did you, that I was well? 8. You surely have not written the letter so that you cannot read it? 9. I asked the boy whether he had ever before seen so big a tree. 10. Then the judge asked who had seen the prisoner.

¹ *Frater est mihi*, there is a brother to me, *i.e.* I have a brother.

[59.] 1. He inquired of me why I had delayed there. 2. He said that he would not come if I were unwilling. 3. I answered that I had already given everything back. 4. You surely went away when you had heard the messenger? 5. They asked me what leader I was following. 6. Those boys, whom I was following, have fled into the woods. 7. The judge asked who I was, where I had come from, and what I had seen. 8. Tell me what has been settled. 9. He inquired of me why I was writing so many letters. 10. I cannot read all the letters which you wrote to me.

SECTION 21.

THE SUPINES.

The two supines in *-um* and *-u* are really verbal nouns of the fourth declension.

1. The supine in *-um* (the accusative) is used after verbs of motion, *eo*, *venio*, *mitto*, etc., to express purpose, *e.g.* *cubitum eo*, *I go to lie down*.

This supine is so far a verb that, like a verb, it can govern a case: *Eo auxilium oratum*, *I go to ask help*.

2. The supine in *-u* (the ablative) is used after certain adjectives only; *facile factu*, *easy in the doing*, *easy to do*; *res foeda visu*, *a thing shocking to see*.

[60.] 1. *Alii dormitum eunt*, *alii opus conficiunt*. 2. *Optimum factu putant dormitum ire*. 3. *Orator dicit omnem pecuniam mihi redditum iri*.¹ 4. *Num*

¹ *Redditum iri* is the future infinitive passive. It is made up of *iri*, the inf. pass. of *eo* used impersonally (=that a movement is being made) and the supine *redditum* (=towards returning). Observe the impersonal use of neuter verbs in the passive, which is not uncommon in Latin: *itur redditum pecuniam*, a movement is being made, people are moving, towards returning the money.

facillimum factu credis milites Romanos vincere? 5. Rogavit cur venissent. Responderunt se venisse oratum pacem. 6. Haec res non modo visu sed etiam auditu foeda est. 7. Servi veniunt oratum ut liceret sibi dormitum ire. 8. Maiores natu ad Caesarem venerunt oratum ne se interficeret. 9. Spero barbaros a Romanis interfectum iri. 10. Alii dicunt, alii negant, Caesarem a Gallis victum iri.

[61.] 1. I shall go to sleep soon. 2. They ask what is best to do. 3. I hope that the money will be given back. 4. I do not think it a very easy thing to do to conquer the enemy. 5. Why have you come to me to beg for money? 6. The battle was shocking both to hear of and to see. 7. Ambassadors came to me to ask for peace. 8. I ask whether you have come to sleep. 9. I did not know what was the best thing to do. 10. They come to Caesar to beg that he will send a few soldiers.

VII.

Proverbial Sayings.

1. Audentes fortuna iuvat. 2. Noli equi dentes inspicere donati. 3. Flamma fumo est proxima. 4. Dum vivis sperare licet. 5. Qualis dominus, talis est servus. 6. Nimia familiaritas parit contemptum. 7. Faber est quisque fortunae suae. 8. Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. 9. Male parta male dilabuntur. 10. Nemo scit praeter me ubi me soccus premat. 11. Formosa facies muta commendatio est. 12. Ubicunque dulce est et acidum invenies. 13. Ne supra crepidam sutor iudicet. 14. Tunica propior pallio est. 15. Turbari sine ventis non solet aequor. 16. Altissima quaeque flumina minimo sono labuntur. 17. Non convalescit planta quae saepe transfertur. 18. Non

terrae ferre omnes omnia possunt. 19. Navem perforas in qua ipse navigas. 20. Labor omnia vincit. 21. Si vis amari ama. 22. Discipulus est prioris posterior dies. 23. Nullus agenti dies longus est. 24. Quod in iuventute non discitur in matura aetate nescitur. 25. Deligere oportet quem velis diligere. 26. Quod non opus est asse carum est. 27. Quem di diligunt adulescens moritur. 28. Insperata accidunt magis saepe quam quae speres.

SECTION 22.

THE GERUND.

Gen. Amandi, *of loving*.

Dat. and Abl. Amando, *for, or, by loving*.

Acc. Amandum, *loving*.

The gerund, like the supine, is a verbal noun ; that is to say, is partly a noun, partly a verb. As noun it depends on another noun : Ars scribendi, *the art of writing* ; as verb it governs a case : Ars scribendi epistulam, *the art of writing a letter*.

The nominative of this noun is supplied by the infinitive : Scribere est difficile, *writing is difficult*. The dative is used after certain adjectives mainly ; the accusative is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad*.

[62.] 1. Milites frumentandi causa in fines hostium missi sunt. 2. Duae legiones flumen transierunt ut in his locis hiemarent. 3. Hostes terrendi causa duas legiones in urbe collocavit. 4. Rogabimus hominem num paratus sit ad pugnandum. 5. Unam legionem in his locis hiemandi causa collocavit. 6. Haec atque alia talia locutus finem orandi fecit. 7. Quaero num finem orandi facturi sint. 8. Naves ad navigandum tam inutiles sunt ut transire non possimus. 9. Barbari

flumen transierunt. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab hostibus premebantur. 10. Castris positis, milites duarum legionum frumentandi causa in fines hostium mittit.

[63.] 1. The soldiers went back for the sake of getting corn. 2. The ships were useless for sailing. 3. I will ask them whether they have come for the purpose of passing the winter. 4. He asked what was the cause of the sending. 5. Of the ships, some are ready, others are useless for sailing. 6. He said that he had come to the city to seek money. 7. I asked whether he was ready for setting out. 8. Did you not go to Rome for the sake of paying the money? 9. When will you make an end of waging war, soldiers? 10. For the sake of alarming the enemy he ordered the cavalry to set out at midnight.

SECTION 23.

THE GERUNDIVE FOR THE GERUND.

Instead of writing—

Labor opus conficiendi, *the toil of finishing the work*, it is more usual to write—

Labor operis conficiendi, with the same meaning; that is to say, the adjective, called the gerundive, is used in the place of the substantive, called the gerund, but only when the verb governs the accusative.

[64.] 1. Consilium urbem capiendi inibimus. 2. His rebus factis consilium urbis capiendae ineunt. 3. Te duce parati sumus ad arma capienda. 4. Talis est tempestas ut hae naves inutiles sint ad transeundum. 5. Ille dies flumini transeundo dictus est. 6. Non inutilem ad opus conficiendum hanc tempestatem puto. 7. Ventus idoneus est; optima navigandi occasio datur.

8. Initio belli gerendi facto non nos oportet legatos pacis orandae causa mittere. 9. Negavit equites paratos esse ad impetum faciendum. 10. Urbis incendendae causa statim proficiscemur.

[65.] 1. Will you adopt a resolution of taking the city? 2. I will give you an opportunity of finishing the work. 3. The ship is ready for sailing and the wind is suitable. 4. Having taken arms, they crossed the river. 5. For the sake of reading the book I will go into the garden. 6. These ships will be useless for crossing the river. 7. We are ready for reading the book. 8. They have adopted the resolution of taking the city. 9. The sailors have come to the harbour for the sake of preparing their ship. 10. Having left their baggage, they advanced for the sake of taking the camp.

SECTION 24.

THE GERUNDIVE.

Besides doing duty for the gerund, the gerundive has another use. It is passive, and expresses that something *should* or *must* be done.

Pecunia reddenda est, *The money must be returned.*

Notice that with the gerundive the dative is used generally instead of the ablative, with *ab*, to express the agent: Hoc mihi faciendum est, *This must be done by me; I must do this.* (The dative should be avoided if its use would make the meaning doubtful. In "pecunia mihi reddenda est," does the *mihi* mean *to me* or *by me*? If the latter say rather *a me*.)

[66.] 1. Nonne saepe iam dixi haec cras reddenda esse? 2. Tali homini nihil a nobis respondendum est. 3. Me duce nihil est timendum. 4. Quot epistulae

mihi scribendae sint nescio. 5. Intellegimus naves nobis faciendas esse, ut tantum flumen transeamus. 6. Hostes vobis neque sine causa timendi neque sine causa contemnuendi sunt. 7. Quid tibi a me dicendum sit nescio. 8. Bellum ita gerendum est ut hostes intellegant se victos esse. 9. Omnia iam paranda sunt ad proficiscendum. 10. Impedimenta nobis relinquenda sunt, si vincere volumus.

[67.] 1. The money must be given back to-day. 2. I must write this letter at once. 3. The prisoners must be bound and sent to Caesar. 4. You must move nothing against my will. 5. We must leave our house and sell everything. 6. We must conquer the enemy in one battle. 7. Pain must be borne bravely by us all. 8. You must find the book which you have lost. 9. May I not go into the garden for the sake of seeing the flowers? 10. The weather is suitable for sailing. The ships must be prepared.

VIII.

Some Marvellous Stories.

E Graecia in Italiam redibamus; et Brundisii, cum egressi e navi in terram in portu illo inclito spatiaremur, fascēs librorum venalium expositos vidimus. Atque ego avide statim pergo ad libros. Erant autem isti omnes libri Graeci, miraculorum fabularumque pleni; ipsa autem volumina ex diutino situ squalebant, et habitu aspectuque taetro erant. Percontatus tamen pretium, mira atque insperata vilitate adductus, libros plurimos parvo pretio emo. Eos omnes duabus proximis noctibus cursim transeo, atque in legendo carpsi exinde 10 quaedam et notavi mirabilia: (a) Homines sunt in Scythia unum oculum in fronte media habentes, qua

fuisse facie Cyclopes poetae ferunt. (b) In ultima quadam terra, quae Albania dicitur, gignuntur homines, 15 qui in pueritia canescunt, et plus cernunt oculis per noctem quam inter diem. (c) In Illyria sunt homines pupillas in singulis oculis binas habentes, qui interimunt videndo quos diutius irati viderunt. (d) In montibus terrae Indiae homines sunt caninis capitibus 20 et latrantes; item alii sunt nullis cervicibus, oculos in humeris habentes. (e) Apud ultimas orientis terras gens est corporibus avium ritu plumantibus, nullo cibo sed spiritu florum naribus hausto vescens. Pygmaei quoque haud longe ab his nascuntur, quorum qui 25 longissimi sunt non longiores sunt quam pedes duo.

SECTION 25.

THE GERUNDIVE—(*Continued*).

Verbs which govern a dative only are used impersonally in the passive—

Credo tibi, *I believe you.*

Tibi a me creditur, *You are believed by me.*

This of course also applies to the gerundive—

Tibi non est credendum, *One must not believe you.*

[68.] 1. Cur ei credidisti? talibus hominibus non est credendum. 2. Quis nescit hostibus parcendum esse? 3. Ad urbem eundum est, ut hos¹ libros emamus, illos¹ vendamus. 4. Pontem in Rheno faciendum curavit ut omnis exercitus transiret. 5. Omnia militibus in castris relinquenda sunt ne in itinere impediuntur. 6. Alii Pompeio, Caesari alii, favendum esse dicunt. 7. Dixit hoc facile factu esse: ei non est credendum. 8. Hostibus parcendum est, ne ab omnibus bonis culpemur. 9.

¹ *Hos*, some; *illos*, others.

Neque mihi neque tibi a iudicibus favendum est. 10. Iam proficiscendum est mihi ; iter per fines Haeduorum faciendum.

[69.] 1. One must not believe everybody. 2. One must spare the soldiers. 3. We must go to the harbour to see the ships. 4. Judges should favour nobody. 5. Everybody says that the baggage ought to be left in the camp. 6. Do you ask whether Caesar ought to be believed? 7. You must go to Rome to see the books. 8. Neither Caesar nor Pompeius should be believed. 9. I must favour neither you nor your friends. 10. The general said that we must march into the territory of the enemy.

SECTION 26.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

We saw (on p. 19) that in translating such a sentence as "He sent them to see the city," care must be taken to use the right tense of the subjunctive. One must write "*Misit eos ut urbem viderent*," just as one would say in English "He sent them that they *might* see the city," not "that they *may* see the city." In sentences like this, that is to say, in sentences which express a purpose, the English will guide you. But in many sentences the English will not show you which tense of the subjunctive to use. Take as an instance, "I ask who was the general"; if we write "*Rogo quis esset imperator*," we write a sentence which, though intelligible, would have sounded strange to Roman ears. A Roman would have written "*Rogo quis fuerit imperator*." The following table shows how the tenses of the subjunctive were generally used in Latin :—

After an indicative	}	write	{	either
present				present subjunctive
or				or
future				perfect subjunctive.

(The sense will show whether the present or the perfect subjunctive is the right tense : compare examples 1 and 2.)

After any past tense of the indicative ¹	}	write	{	either imperfect subjunctive or pluperfect subjunctive.
---	---	-------	---	--

(The sense will show whether the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is the right tense: compare examples 6 and 7.)

Examples:—

1. Rogo quis sis, *I ask who you are.*
2. Rogo quid feceris, *I ask what you have done, or, what you did.*
3. Rogabo quis fuerit, *I will ask who it was.*
4. Tanta erat multitudo hostium, ut nostri pugnare non auderent, *So great was the number of the enemy that our men did not dare to fight.*
5. Haec dixit ne stultus videretur, *He said this that he might not seem foolish.*
6. Rogaverat quid faceres, *He had asked what you were doing.*
7. Rogabat quid fecissem, *He was asking me what I had done.*

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

1. Commands may be rendered in Latin as in English by the imperative mood.

Tell me, Dic mihi.

Write the letter, Scribe epistulam.

2. Prohibitions.—“Don’t write” is [not “Ne scribe,” but] either (1) “Noli scribere” (*noli*, imperative of *nolo*), or (2) “Ne scripseris” (perf. subj.)

- [70.] 1. Iam redeundum est ut ad tempus veniamus. 2. Oportuit nos abire ne ab hostibus caperemur. 3.

¹ The past tenses of the indicative are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. The perfect when translated “I have sent” (not “I sent”) is really a present tense, for it means “I have now done it.” When it has this meaning it may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive: for instance, *Misi eos ut urbem videant*, “I have sent them that they may see the city.” But as the imperfect subjunctive is usually employed even in such sentences, we may treat the perfect as if it were always a past tense.

Me iudice, non rogandus est num in Gallia vixerit. 4. Me absente, rogatus est num Lutetiae vixisset. 5. Rogabimus hominem num navem incenderit. 6. Scire voluimus num orator esses. 7. Rogabimus quot homines occisi sint. 8. His rebus cognitis rogavimus num in eadem sententia maneret. 9. Flumen transiit ut imperatorem de fuga Gallorum certiores faceret. 10. Aperienda est fenestra ut imperatorem videamus.

[71.] 1. I stayed at home to finish my letter. 2. Having finished my letter I went into the garden to gather flowers. 3. I will ask him whether he paid the money. 4. The weather was such that I could not sleep. 5. In my father's absence I went to London to buy the book. 6. Tell me who bought the house.—I could not sell it. 7. I want to know who opened the window. Don't pretend that you don't know. 8. Having set out at daybreak, he returned in the evening to inform the king that the army was conquered. 9. Tell me whether you are allowed to come with us. 10. I preferred to ask him what he had answered.

[72.] 1. I want to know who fled to the hills. 2. I asked him whether the weather was suitable for sailing. 3. He said that he did not know whether it was raining. 4. We will open the window that we may see the ships. 5. We went into the garden to pick the flowers. 6. The flowers are so beautiful that I am unwilling to pick them. 7. Tell me whom you are looking for. 8. I am asking every one who has lost this sum of money. 9. We have not seen¹ the man who promised that he would pay us the money. 10. Tell me who promised money to you.—The general, whom you saw in the camp, promised.

¹ For "the man who" write *cum qui* (= "him who").

SECTION 27.

TO HOPE, AND TO PROMISE.

1. *He promises to come*, Promittit se venturum esse.
2. *I hope to remain at Rome*, Spero me Romae mansurum esse.
3. *I hope that the queen will believe you*, Spero reginam tibi credituram esse¹.

Promitto, "I promise," as it refers to future time, is always followed by the future infinitive in Latin. *Spero*, "I hope," is followed by the future infinitive when it refers to the future.²

The subject to the infinitive must always be expressed in the Latin: do not write *Promitto venturum* for "I promise to come," but *Promitto me venturum*, "I promise that I am about to come." The participle agrees with its subject: "She promises to come," *Promittit se venturam esse*. "The girls promise to come," *Puellae promittunt se venturas esse*.

[73.] 1. Promittit se in Galliam profecturum: sperat se Haeduos victurum. 2. Promittisne te facturum esse ea quae ego iubeo?—Faciam si potero. 3. Victus promisit se ab urbe abiturum, neque unquam rediturum. 4. Num speras nos tibi credituros? 5. Regina sperat se hostes victuram. 6. Exercitu victo, dux hostium

¹ *Esse* may be omitted.

² But, of course, one may write *Spero te domi esse*, "I hope you are at home (now)," for the sense is "I hope that you are at *this moment* at home." Compare with this sentence 2 above—"I hope to remain at Rome," which means "I hope that I shall *in the time that is coming* remain at Rome." *Spero* may also be followed by a perfect infinitive if the sense requires it: "I hope that you have now returned," *Spero te iam rediisse*.

promisit se viginti obsides daturum. 7. Spero me fratrem tuum adiuturum. 8. Si me rogabis quid sperem, respondebo me sperare Gallos victum iri. 9. His de rebus certior factus, promisit se celeriter profecturum. 10. Rogo te nonne promiseris te longam epistulam scripturum?

[74.] 1. I hope to come to Rome to-morrow that I may see you. 2. Did you promise to stay at home? 3. I hope that you will soon see your father: your brothers say that the old man is well. 4. In my absence Labienus promised to lead the tenth legion to Rome. 5. I hope to see the queen, whom my brother saw yesterday. 6. My brother has promised to write a poem: my sister has promised to read the book. 7. I have promised to say nothing. I am not allowed to tell you the name. 8. Did you hope that the king would believe you? Did you think that the queen would give you money? 9. Ought we to believe the messenger? Do you think that the prisoner ought to be bound? 10. He often asks who led the army into the territory of the Germans.

IX.

Sertorius and the Hind.

Sertorius vir acer egregiusque dux et utendi regendique exercitus peritus fuit. Is in temporibus difficillimis et mentiebatur ad milites, et litteras compositas pro veris legebat, et somnia simulabat, si quid istae res eum apud militum animos adiuvabant. Illud ⁵ adeo Sertorii nobile est: Cerva alba, pulcherrima simul et celerrima, a Lusitano ei quodam dono data est. Hanc sibi datam divinitus et instinctam Dianae numine esse et colloqui secum et docere quae utilia factu essent omnibus persuadebat. Si quid durius volebat militibus ¹⁰

imperare a cerva sese monitum praedicabat. Id cum dixerat universi tamquam si deo libentes parebant.

Ea cerva quodam die, cum incursio esset hostium nuntiata, festinatione ac tumultu consternata in fugam
 15 prorupit, atque in palude proxima delituit, et postea frustra requisita periisse credita est. Neque multis diebus post inventam esse cervam Sertorio nuntiatur. Tum qui nuntiaverat iussit tacere, praecepitque ut eam postero die repente in cubiculum immitteret. Postridie
 20 igitur praesentibus amicis dixit: Visum mihi est in quiete cervam quae perierat ad me reverti, et, ut prius consuevit, quod opus est facto docere. Tum servo significat. Cerva missa in cubiculum Sertorii introrupit; admirati omnes clamorem sustulerunt.

SECTION 28.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

(WITH ADDITIONAL NOTES ON SOME DIFFICULT POINTS).

Notes.—In the seven following exercises pay special attention to the following points:—

1. Put the subjunctive in the indirect question.
2. When using the accusative and infinitive, put the right tense of the infinitive :
 - (a) *Caius said that he was reading the book.*
 Gaius dixit se librum lēgere (present infin.)
 [Caius said, Lēgo librum, *I am reading the book.*]
 - (b) *Caius said that he had read the book.*
 Gaius dixit se librum lēgisse (perfect infin.)
 [Caius said, Lēgi librum, *I have read the book.*]
3. Be careful about the *case* of the relative pronoun :
 - (a) *The book, which Caius wrote, will please you.*
 Liber, quem Gaius scripsit, te delectabit.

(b) *The book, which pleased you, pleases me.*

Liber, qui te delectavit, me delectat.

Observe that in an English relative sentence the subject always comes next to the verb: thus in (a) "Caius" is subject, in (b) "which" is subject.

[75.] 1. He said that he was well. We said that we did not believe him. 2. The judge said that he did not favour the rich. 3. I know that he promised to help the king. 4. In order that I might go home I started at daybreak. 5. The cold was so great that I could not sleep. 6. What are you writing?—Why do you ask me what I am writing? 7. I cannot come to-day; I promise to come to-morrow. 8. The boy hoped to understand everything. 9. Don't you think that this soldier ought to be despised? 10. I promise to write a letter to you, to inform you of my affairs.

[76.] 1. When the war is finished I hope to return to you. 2. When the Gauls are conquered I hope that my fields will be returned to me. 3. On being asked whether he knew the judge, he answered that he had seen him. 4. The soldier's mother hopes that the city will soon be taken. 5. She thinks that her son will soon return. 6. She does not know that he has been wounded by the enemy. 7. I told her that her son was well; I did not dare to say that he was about to die. 8. We promised to stay three days in this town. 9. I hope to find the book which you gave me. 10. Ask him whether he has seen the man.

Note.—How to distinguish the relative from the interrogative.

1. *I will do what you bid me*

(that is, "I will do that which," or "the things which, you shall bid me").

(*Relative clause*) *Ea quae iubebis, faciam.*

2. *I don't know what he has bidden us to do.*

(*Indirect question*) Quid nos facere iusserit, nescio.

We use the words "what," "who," "which" (and some other words) both as interrogatives and as relatives; hence it is somewhat difficult to distinguish an indirect question from a relative sentence. Observe that in a relative sentence we can put "that which" or "the things which" instead of "what," without making any change in the sense. In an indirect question this is impossible. For instance, if we put "that which" for "what" in sentence 2 above, we change the sense.

[77.] 1. Rogavi eum quid scripsisset. 2. Ea quae scripsisti difficillima sunt intellectu. 3. Rogavi eum quid facere deberet. Homo stultissimus negavit se scire quid esset faciendum. 4. Nonne id dixi quod mihi dicendum erat? 5. Scire volo quis tecum profecturus sit. 6. Me consule occisus est homo turpissimus, qui consilium inierat perdendae civitatis. 7. Hoc facto, rogavi eum uter nostrum captivis pepercisset. 8. Mihi roganti respondit se regem interficere voluisse, me noluisse. 9. Num putas eum vera dixisse? Nonne mihi credis? 10. Utri sit credendum, nescimus.

[78.] 1. I have done what you ordered. 2. He asked me what I had ordered them to do. 3. I wish to know who informed you that the city would be taken. 4. Have you seen the temple which we have built? 5. He asked me what I was writing: I gave him the letter which I had written. 6. We told him that we had seen an island in the midst of the sea; he did not seem to believe us. 7. The doctor says that you must stay in the country. 8. The cold is so great that I do not wish to stay here; may I not go to the city? 9. I

hope I shall see what you saw at Capua. 10. He asked me what I had seen in Sicily.

[79.] 1. Tell me whom you saw in the city.—I saw the man who promised to give you that beautiful dog. 2. I asked him whether he had given it to you. 3. He answered that he hoped to come soon to see you. 4. Do you know the man who made the long speech? He seems very wise. 5. Miserable man that I am! I have lost the book which she gave me. 6. Can you not inform me who built the temple, which we saw yesterday? 7. The girl who was speaking with me did not remember the name. 8. He pretended that he had read a book which I had written. 9. I asked him whether he lived at Paris. 10. This he did that he might not be seen by the soldiers, who had been ordered to bind him.

NOTE ON THE USE OF “SE” AND “SUUS.”

The rule is that *se* refers back to the subject of the sentence.

1. Caesar dixit *se* vicisse Gallos, *Caesar said that he (i.e. Caesar) had conquered the Gauls.*
(Caesar is the subject; *se* means Caesar; he said, *Ego vici Gallos*, “*I have conquered the Gauls.*”)
2. Caesar dixit eum victum esse, *Caesar said that he (not Caesar) had been beaten.*
(He said, *Victus est*, not *Ego sum victus*.)

A few more instances may make the distinction clearer. Remember that *se* may be singular or plural, and of either gender.

3. Balbus dixit *se* suos libros amisisse et illius epistulam, *Balbus said that he had lost his (Balbus’) books, and his (Caius’) letter.*

This is the reported form of—

Ego meos libros amisi et illius epistulam, *I have lost my books and his letter.*

4. Negaverunt sibi redeundum esse: eum emisse domum suam, *They said that they ought not to return: that he had bought their house.*

The actual words of the speakers were—

Non redeundum est nobis: is emit domum nostram, *We ought not to return: he has bought our house.*

What is the difference between—

Puella dixit se ei credituram esse, *and*
Puella dixit eum sibi crediturum esse?

[80.] 1. Certior factus sum eum epistulam scripsisse. 2. Negavit se eum vidisse. 3. Dixerunt eum sibi credidisse. 4. Nonne inimici simulaverunt eum victum esse? 5. Negavit se scire quot libri sibi legendi essent. 6. Uxor imperatoris sperat eum, hostibus victis, mox rediturum. 7. Imperator sperat se eam visurum. 8. Puella negavit eum sibi cibum dedisse. 9. Pessimus homo simulavit se ei multa dedisse. 10. Speraverunt se opus suum mox confecturos, ut eius carmina legerent.

[81.] 1. The general said that he had ordered fifty men to go into the territory of the Haedui to get corn. 2. The soldiers denied that he had given this order. 3. On being asked whether her father had set out, she answered that he was not well. 4. We thought that he would not understand us. 5. He said that he would go to the fields to take exercise. 6. She said that he had deceived her; *and* that she was very miserable. 7. Cicero thought that he had saved his country: we thought that he had wasted time. 8. They did not think that we should return the books to them. 9. My

brother said that he did not wish to write letters. 10. We thought that he was not far away: a messenger said that he had seen the camp.

SECTION 29.

“*TE DUCEM FACIMUS.*”

In the following sentences notice the case of *dux*:—

1. *Te ducem facimus, We make you (our) leader.*
2. *Ego dux factus sum, I have been made leader.*

Take care not to write “*factus sum ducem.*” The passive verb cannot govern an accusative, but *dux* will be in the same case as *ego*.

[82.] 1. *Ciceronem et Antonium consules fecimus.* 2. *Spero fore¹ ut consul fias, ut Catilinam, hominem pessimum, ex civitate pellas.* 3. *Iste homo turpissimus a militibus rex factus est.* 4. *Ego sapiens videor, tu stultus haberis.* 5. *Urbem condidit, quam e suo nomine Roman iussit nominari.* 6. *Cicero habitus est orator magnus: Catilina interfecto Pater patriae est nominatus.* 7. *Spero me, patre mortuo, regem factum iri.* 8. *Certior factus sum tantam esse hostium multitudinem ut nostri pugnare non audeant.* 9. *Vir sapiens negabat fore ut pecunia nos divites faceret.* 10. *Rogatus quid esset faciendum, respondit nos oportere prima luce proficisci.*

[83.] 1. He named the city, which he had founded, Rome. 2. The general sent the fifth legion into the territory of the Belgae. 3. Do not go away to the

¹ *Fore* is the fut. inf. of *sum*; literally the sentence means “I hope it will happen (*fore*) that you become,” etc. The fut. inf. pass. is often thus supplied in Latin: *Spero te consulem factum iri* would give the same sense.

country, lest you be considered a friend of the base¹ Catiline. 4. You will be considered a very lazy boy, and you will make your mother most miserable. 5. The soldier thought that the river ought to be crossed, in order that Caesar might be informed of the approach of the enemy. 6. I asked which of the (two) brothers was named Quintus. 7. Do not seek money but wisdom; the philosophers deny that money makes a man rich. 8. All men say that Caesar will be nominated dictator, in order that he may save the state. 9. My friend Scipio often said that the city of Carthage ought to be burned. 10. Having learnt these facts the soldiers made me leader.

SECTION 30.

“MULTA ME ROGAVIT.”

Many neuter pronouns (such as *id*, *hoc*, *idem*) and a few neuter adjectives (such as *unum*, *multa*, *omnia*) are used as the objects of verbs where a substantive could not be used. Thus *Hoc gaudeo*, “I rejoice at this” (but one could not say *Pacem gaudeo*, “I rejoice at the peace”); *Multa me rogavit*, “He asked me many questions” (but one could not say *Pecuniam me rogavit*, “He asked me for money”); *Hoc unum me monuit*, “He gave me this one piece of advice;” *Idem servum iussit*, “He gave the slave the same order.”

[84.] 1. Quid tu puerum docuisti?—Artem belli gerendi eum docui, ut patriam defendere posset. 2. Ego per agros ibo, tu flumen transibis, urbem inibis. 3. Ne multa me rogaveris; omnibus de rebus mox

¹ The base Catiline, *Catilina*, homo turpissimus: the good Cicero, *Cicero*, vir bonus. In Latin you cannot have an adjective with a proper name: put in *vir* or *homo*.

certior fies. 4. Quid gaudes?—Hoc gaudeo, te consilium inisse adiuvandi patris. 5. Id unum te moneo, ne patre absente navem solvas. 6. Hoc enim spero, me urbem duos iam annos obsessam capturum. 7. Belgas adorti multa milia passuum secuti sumus. 8. Puellam rogavi quis flores carpsisset. 9. Ad Italiam navigans de nostris moribus multa rogatus sum. 10. Tullius, vir optimus, civitatem servavisse dicitur.

[85.] 1. He attacked the Haedui as they were crossing the river. 2. Your friends will ask you who has taught you German manners. 3. I give you this one piece of advice, not to¹ send the tenth legion to get corn in the absence of the general. 4. He asked me whether I had seen a traveller in the wood. 5. I rejoice at this, that you have promised to remain at home in your brother's absence. 6. He made the same inquiry of my mother: she said that she had never seen the great Scipio. 7. I will teach you the art of opening the window. 8. It is said that while crossing the river he fell into the water. (*Say*, He is said . . . to have fallen.) 9. It is said that the general Caesar will conquer the Belgae. 10. He asked us many questions: we said that Cicero would be nominated dictator.

X.

Fables about India.

Incolarum habitus moresque diversi. Quidam parentes et propinquos, priusquam annis et macie conficiantur, velut hostias caedunt eorumque visceribus epulantur. Ii qui sapientiam profitentur ab ortu solis ad occasum stare solent, solem immobilibus oculis intuentes; fer-
ventibus arenis totum diem alternis pedibus insistent.

¹ *Ne* with subjunctive: compare sentence 5 of the last exercise.

Maximos India elephantos gignit. Hoc animal cetera omnia docilitate superat. Discunt arma iacere, gladiatorum more congregi, saltare et per funes incedere.
 10 Narrat scriptor quidam Romae unum segnioris ingeni saepe castigatum esse verberibus, quia tardius accipiebat quae tradebantur; eundem repertum esse noctu eadem meditantem. Elephanti gregatim semper ingrediuntur. Ducit agmen maximus natu, cogit is, qui aetate ei est
 15 proximus. Amnem transitori minimos praemittunt. Capiuntur foveis. In has ubi elephas deciderit, ceteri ramos congerunt, aggeres construunt, omnique vi conantur extrahere.

In India quoque serpentes perpetuum bellum cum
 20 elephantis gerunt. Ex arboribus se in praetereuntes praecipitant gressusque ligant nodis. Hos nodos elephantum manu resolvunt. At dracones in ipsas elephantum nares caput condunt spiritumque praecludunt. Plerumque in illa dimicatione utrique commoriuntur;
 25 victus enim elephas corruens serpentem pondere suo elidit.

SECTION 31.

"ALIQUID CIBI."

Certain adjectives and pronouns are used in the neuter singular (nom. and acc.) with a dependent genitive. For instance, "some food" is *aliquid cibi* (something in the way of food); "what news?" *quid novi?*—"how much money?" *quantum pecuniae?*—"nothing good," *nihil boni*; "much pleasure," *multum voluptatis*; "more grief," *plus doloris*; "less wine," *minus vini*; "if there is any money in the city," *si quid pecuniae in urbe est*.

Notice that the genitive is *not* used in Latin in such phrases as the following:—

The top of the oak, *Summa quercus*.
 The middle of the night, *Media nox*.
 The foot of the mountain, *Imus mons* (*infimus*
 or *imus* = lowest).
 The island of Britain, *Insula Britannia*.
 The city of Capua, *Urbs Capua*.

Quis, quid, following *num, ne, or si*, mean “any,”
 “any one,” “anything.”

Otherwise, *quis, quid* are interrogative.

Quis fecit? Who did it?
Num quis fecit? Did any one do it?
Quid dicit? What does he say?
Si quid dicit, If he says anything.

Again, in indirect questions—

Rogo quis loquatur, I ask who is speaking.
Rogo num quis loquatur, I ask whether any
one is speaking.

[86.] 1. Nihil boni fecit, nihil iusti. 2. Noli putare te Caesaris similem esse. 3. Fessus ab urbe rediit: dixit se aliquid cibi cupere, nihil vini. 4. Milites, multo vino¹ reperto, finem fecerunt incendendae urbis. 5. Rogasne quid mihi sit morbi?—Nihil est morbi, doloris multum. 6. Nonne speras te aliquid boni facturum? 7. Si quid triste² audiisti, ne locutus sis. 8. Dux captivum rogavit num quid periculi esset. Respondit omnia³ plena esse hostium. 9. Cupidus gloriae promisit se plus pecuniae militibus daturum. 10. Dixit se aliquid negotii habere; negotio confecto in hortum se venturum. Spero eum mox venturum.

¹ Not *multo vini*.

² Observe *si quid triste*: *triste* agrees with *quid*. Genitives in *-is* are not used in the way illustrated in this exercise: *aliquid boni*, but *aliquid melius*.

³ Say, The whole countryside.

[87.] 1. If you have heard any news don't be silent. 2. I asked Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, how much corn he could give us. 3. He answered that he had much corn, *but*¹ no wine. 4. When his army was conquered Cato thought nothing better than death. 5. At the foot of the mountain is a city, which is named Geneva. 6. We have promised the Helvetii² to give no corn to Caesar. 7. He said that he saw something beautiful yesterday in the city. 8. There is nothing more beautiful than the city of Naples. 9. *Being* desirous of money he did not give the wine, which he had promised to give, to the soldiers. 10. If you give³ less food to your horse it will die.

SECTION 32.

THE VERB "INTEREST."

- (a) Interest Caesaris bellum ante hiemem confieri,
It is important to Caesar that the war should be finished before the winter.

The impersonal verb *interest* is followed by a genitive of the person:⁴ *Interest regis*, "It is important *to* the king;" *Interest omnium*, "It matters *to* everybody."

¹ Remember that words printed in italics are not to be translated.

² Say, We have promised *to* the Helvetii.

³ Future tense.

⁴ But not a genitive of the thing: *Interest ad laudem civitatis*, "It is important with a view to the glory of the State." *Interest* means first, "There is a difference" (*est inter*, "there is something between"); *Inter hominem et beluam hoc interest*, "Between man and beast there is this difference." From this very easily comes the sense, "It makes a difference," "It is important." Hence *Multum interest*, "It makes a great difference," "It is very important;" *Nihil interest*, "It is of no importance."

But it does *not* take a genitive of the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *se*: instead of *mei* (*nostri*), *tui* (*vestri*), and *sui*, write *meū* (*nostrū*), *tuū* (*vestrū*), and *suū*. These are the ablative singular fem. of the adjectives, *meus*, *tuus*, etc.

(b) Interest mea Romam ire, *It is of importance to me to go to Rome.*

(c) Interest tua regem in urbe manere, *It is to your interest that the king should remain in the city.*

(d) Dixit sua interesse navem solvi, *He said that it was of importance to him that the ship should be launched.*

[88.] 1. Non mea sed patris interest te opus conficere. 2. Imperatoris interest milites satis frumenti habere. 3. Hoc unum te rogabo: Cuius interest hunc hominem condemnari? 4. Pater sua interesse putat te honestam vitam agere. 5. Cur rogas me quid faciam? Quid tua interesse potest? 6. Novistine istum hominem, qui negotio deditus esse videtur? Doctissimus esse habetur. 7. Omnium civium interest me consulem fieri. 8. Spero te sequi posse: ad bellum gerendum multum interest te ante decimum diem adesse. 9. Nihil interest regis te in eadem sententia manere. 10. Quid Pompeii intererat interfici Caesarem?

[89.] 1. It is important to us to see you. Can you come to Rome to-morrow? 2. It is of importance to the enemy to know how great are our forces and who is the general. 3. It does not matter to the judge that you deny this. 4. So great is the boy's love of his mother that he is not willing to go away to the country. 5. He stays at home and gives himself up to books that he may become wise. 6. It is of no importance to the citizens that you are about to return to the country. 7. *Those* who were standing round thought that the orator surpassed all men in wisdom; but he

was considered foolish by the philosophers. 8. Is it important to a philosopher that you are rich? 9. What does it matter to me that you are considered the bravest of the Germans? 10. Did I not conquer your king Ariovistus?

SECTION 33.

GENITIVES OF POSSESSION OR OF QUALITY USED AS PREDICATES.

1. Quae patris fuerunt, Balbi fiunt, *What was his father's property, becomes the property of Balbus.*
 2. Patris est monere filium, *It is a father's duty to advise his son, or, It is for a father to advise his son.*
 3. Sapientis est tempori cedere, *It is wise to yield to circumstances, or, It is the way of a wise man, etc.*
 4. Summae virtutis est in medios hostes impetum facere, *It is a sign of great bravery, or, It requires great bravery to charge into the midst of the foe.*
5. In place of the genitive a possessive adjective may be used :—

Non meum est punire filium tuum, *It isn't my business, or, It isn't for me to punish your son.*

It will be noticed that there is no separate word in the Latin sentences for the English "duty," "business," "sign," etc. In translating these genitives from the Latin you will have to supply some such word to make English.

Sentence 3 should be specially noticed. "It is foolish to yield" might be translated either *Stultum est cedere*, or *Stulti est cedere*; but *Sapientis est* means "He is wise," and is not used for "It is wise." *Sapientis est*, "It is the way of a wise man," is used instead.

[90.] 1. Patris est filium monere ne pigram vitam agat. 2. Parvi animi est nihil admirari. 3. Putavit militis esse pro patria mori. 4. Num tu meum esse putas tibi, turpissimo homini, subvenire? 5. Dixit Germanorum esse in castris semper vitam agere. 6. Barbarorum est nihil scire, nullos libros habere. 7. Victi id rogatis, quod victores poscere nunquam audent. 8. Ego autem puto victoris esse poscere, victi parēre. 9. Talia frustra rogabitis: non meum esse puto vobis parcere: omnibus ante noctem moriendum. 10. Num sapientis est Balbum, iustissimum hominem, accusare?

[91.] 1. It is the *duty* of good citizens to help those who rule the state. 2. It is a little mind which admires little things. (It is the *way* of a little mind to admire . . .) 3. Do you think it is the *duty* of a judge to condemn such a man? 4. It is foolish to ask me such questions. 5. It is not for me to hear such men. 6. Is it the *duty* of an orator to deceive men? 7. It is for the general to give orders, for the soldier to obey. 8. It is a friendly act to help a friend. (It is the *way* of a friend . . .) 9. It is wise to hope for much,¹ to expect little.¹ 10. We have suffered much: we have found no gold: we all wish to return home.

XI.

A Murder at an Inn.

In itinere quidam proficiscentem ad mercatum quendam et secum aliquantum nummorum ferentem est consecutus. Cum hoc, ut fere fit, in via sermonem contulit: ex quo factum est, ut illud iter familiarius facere vellent. Qua re, cum in eandem tabernam⁵ devertissent, simul cenare et in eodem loco somnum

¹ Nenter plural.

capere voluerunt. Cenati discubuerunt ibidem ; neque tamen uterque vivus surrexit. Quomodo perisset dicitur post inventum esse, cum in alio maleficio deprehensus
 10 esset caupo. Is enim noctu, postquam illos arctius iam, ut fit, ex lassitudine dormire sensit, accessit, et alterius eorum qui sine nummis erat gladium propter appositum e vagina eduxit, et illum alterum occidit ; nummos abstulit, gladium cruentum in vaginam recondidit, ipse
 15 se in suum lectum recepit. Ille autem, cuius gladio occisio erat facta, multo ante lucem surrexit ; comitem illum suum inclamavit semel et saepius. Illum somno impeditum non respondere existimavit : ipse gladium et cetera quae secum attulerat sustulit ; solus profectus est.
 20 Caupo non multo post conclamat hominem esse occisum, et cum quibusdam deversoribus illum qui ante exierat consequitur in itinere. Hominem comprehendit ; gladium eius e vagina educit ; reperit cruentum. Homo in urbem ab illis deducitur ac reus fit.

SECTION 34.

HOW TO TRANSLATE "IF HE SPEAKS," "WHEN HE SPEAKS," ETC.

1. *If he speaks, the rest keep silent*, Si loquitur, ceteri tacent.
2. *If he speaks, I will listen*, Si loquetur, audiam.
3. *If he speaks, he will be punished*, Si locutus erit, poenam dabit.

Latin is more exact than English in the use of the tenses. In the three English sentences given above, "If he speaks" does duty as a present, a future, and a future perfect. In Latin *Si loquitur* can only be used of present time, as in sentence 1. In sentences 2 and 3, "If he speaks" refers to future time, and a future tense

will be necessary ; but there are two futures, the future simple (*loquetur*, “He shall be speaking”) and the future perfect (*locutus erit*, “He shall have spoken”). The future simple is used in 2, because the speaking and listening go on at the same time (“If he shall be speaking, I shall be listening”). The future perfect is used in 3, because the speaking is finished before the punishing begins (“If he shall have spoken, he will be punished”).

The Latin future perfect may be translated into English either by the present, as in sentence 3 above, or by the perfect, as in 4.

4. *Cras redibo, si negotium confecerō, I will return to-morrow if I have finished my business.*
5. *Cum redierit gaudebo, When he returns I shall be glad.*
6. *Veniam cum potero, I will come when I can.*

[92.] 1. *Cum Gallos vicerit, nuntios ad nos mittet.* 2. *Si ab hostibus urbis victus erit, condemnabitur.* 3. *Si quid novi acciderit, litteras ad me scribe.* 4. *Si quis ducem certiozem fecerit quo in periculo simus, nobis auxilio veniet.* 5. *Cum epistulas scripsero, in hortum veniam.* 6. *Si magnam pecuniam ei dederis, artem pugnandi te docebit.* 7. *Qua in arte si ceteris prae-stabis, pater dabit tibi aliquid praemii.* 8. *Si litteras ad matrem scribis, roga quando sit reditura.* 9. *Iudicis est quaerere quid sit verum.* 10. *Flumen transibit cum satis militum habebit, ut hostes adoriatur.*

Note.—In the following exercises “when” is to be translated by *cum*. [Of course many of the sentences might, by the use of participles, be rendered without *cum*. But in order to avoid difficulties, the beginner is recommended to use *cum* only, at first.]

[93.] 1. If you send¹ your book to me, I will read

¹ Does this mean (1) “if you are now sending,” or (2) “if you shall be sending,” or (3) “if you shall have sent”?

it. 2. If he can, he will come to the camp to see us in the evening. 3. If I hear anything sad to-morrow, I shall not inform my father. 4. When he sees you, he will be angry. 5. If I sell my house, I shall go to Italy to see the great city of Rome. 6. Do not fear. If he attacks us I shall easily kill him. 7. If you can come to-morrow, you will see my friend Caius. 8. The man who killed his mother is said to be like me: if they see me, they will kill me. 9. If you have finished your work before the fifth hour, you will be able to come with us. 10. If I am silent, he will be made dictator and will make me rich. I ask you what I ought to do.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

[94.] 1. My sister is so timid that she does not dare to go into the garden by night. 2. I will stay ten days with you. On the eleventh day all¹ of us will go to the island of Sicily, to see the temple. 3. If the old man is well, he will come with us. 4. It is not for me to tell you how important it is to us to take much food and some wine. 5. Is there not more pain than pleasure in waging war? 6. Twenty¹ of us set out for the camp of Caesar: we eight are now returning: the rest² are dead. 7. When he comes, he will tell us who is the leader of the Belgae. 8. If the judge is informed of this matter, we shall be accused of treason. 9. When he returns from Gaul, we will hear him. 10. If we are allowed, twenty of us will set off at daybreak.

[95.] 1. Balbus says that it is very important to

¹ "All of us came," *i.e.* we all came (*omnes venimus*): "five of you came," *i.e.* you five came (*quinque venistis*).

² The rest, *reliqui*.

him that I should be present. 2. The soldiers, whom we saw at Corinth, will be sent to Asia. 3. If we spare him, he will return to take the town. 4. When the war is finished, he hopes to live at home. 5. Having encouraged the soldiers, he ordered *them* to charge into the midst of the enemy. 6. I hope to see the man, about whom we were speaking. 7. Is it not a father's *duty* to teach his son virtue? 8. If he informs my mother of this matter, I will kill him. 9. If all of you help the consul, he will soon finish what he has promised. 10. Tell me what you have bought.

[96.] 1. So great was the general's love of his soldiers, that he gave up to them the city which-he-had-captured.¹ 2. When I come into the country, my mother will rejoice. 3. Being asked what news there was, I said that Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, was dead. 4. If you are made judge, none of us will remain in the city. 5. It is said² that the Britons inhabit a small island in the middle of the sea. 6. If he has a horse, he will be able to follow. 7. If you buy a horse, you will have no money. 8. If you take the city, you will find nothing beautiful. 9. When we have written our letters, we will come to you. 10. Do not think me foolish: I am doing what I was ordered to do.

[97.] 1. If the messenger crosses the river, he will be killed by the soldiers who are in the wood. 2. If the general seems timid, the soldiers dare not fight. 3. When I return to town, we will talk of these matters. 4. We ordered the man, who seemed to be a sailor, to return to the ships. 5. I hope that the horses which you lost will soon be found. 6. The soldiers made the

¹ Use participle of *capiō*.

² Say, The Britons are said to inhabit, etc.

same inquiry of me : I answered that I could not give the general information on that matter. 7. When I am at Naples I will write you a long letter. 8. If an opportunity of speaking is given, he will not keep silence. 9. If they take the city, they will kill us and burn our houses. 10. If he is at home, he is writing letters : do not enter.

(In this exercise "you" is plural.)

[98.] 1. Did you not say that you would burn this beautiful city? 2. Now you yourselves are prisoners; you come to me, whom you wished to slay. 3. You pray me, the conqueror, to grant life to you. 4. What ought I to do? Why are you silent? Why do you not answer? 5. I will tell you why you do not answer. You do not dare to say what ought to be done. 6. It is not the *way* of a Roman general to spare those who attack a Roman camp. 7. All must die: life is to be granted to none of you. 8. Did you not try to attack the third legion as it was advancing against the Belgae? Do you deny this? 9. Do not forget that I have heard everything from the soldiers who fled to our camp. 10. The Roman army was willing to help you. But it is not the *way* of a friend to attack a friend.

SECTION 35.

THE DATIVE OF INTEREST.

1. Est mihi equus, *I have a horse.*
2. Domus aedificatur domino non servis, *A house is built for the master, not the slaves.*

It will be seen that the words in the dative denote the persons for whom something is done, or something exists. Compare the use of the dative after such verbs

as *subvenio* ; *subvenio tibi* means, “I come up for your sake, to help you.”

“CUM” (“WHEN”) WITH PAST TENSES.

3. *Cum ad urbem rediret, epistolam accepit*, *When he was returning to the city he received the letter.*

4. *Cum flumen transiisset, nihil moratus est*, *When he had crossed the river, he did not delay.*

After the conjunction *cum* put the subjunctive when you use the imperfect or pluperfect tense.¹

The English will not always make it clear whether the imperfect or the pluperfect is the right tense to use. For instance—

When he returned home he was informed of this, write,
Cum domum rediisset de hac re certior factus est.

The sense is, “He learned this *after* his arrival, when he *had* returned.” Contrast the following sentence:—

When he was at Rome he wrote this letter, *Cum Romae esset hanc epistolam scripsit.*

The sense is, “While he was at Rome,” not “When he had been.”

[99.] 1. *Num quid pecuniae tibi est?*—*Argenti nihil habeo, multum auri.* 2. *Sapientibus, non stultis, scriptus est liber; nec quisquam intellegere potest, nisi summa cura legit.* 3. *Patri tuo nihil persuadebis, nisi ipse veneris.* 4. *Cum militibus decimae legionis subvenire vellet, statim profectus est.* 5. *Ea quae secuta est aestate, cum Rhenum flumen transisset, in fines Germanorum iter fecit.* 6. *Cum milites nihil sperare intellex-*

¹ The more advanced student should notice that *cum* is followed by the indicative when it means “whenever,” “as often as.”

Cum ille cantabat irascebar, *Whenever he sang I got angry.*

But, *Cum cantaret aberam*, *I was not present during his song.*

isset, haec locutus est. 7. Vobis, milites, non mihi vincetis; vobis erit gloria victae Galliae. 8. Vestrum erit, si quid praemii Populus Romanus dabit. 9. Vobis erit, non mihi, quidquid divitiarum est in urbibus hostium. 10. Quid tibi est consilii?—Quid nobis sit faciendum, nescio.

Note.—What is the difference between *rus* and *patria*?

Look up “country” in dictionary.

(“When” is to be translated by *Cum*.)

[100.] 1. I conquer the enemy not for myself but for my country. 2. When he had conquered the Belgae, he stayed ten days in the city. 3. They called him father of his country, and made him very rich. 4. If you give me enough corn, I will not hurt you. 5. If you are conquered, the enemy will march to Rome. 6. Do you think that our allies will assist you? Will the enemy spare you? 7. It is of the greatest importance to you to remember the valour of your ancestors. 8. We live in the camp: we have not a house. (Do not use *habeo*.) 9. When I received your letter I started at once. 10. When your father was living, you had less money *but* more pleasure.

SECTION 36.

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR EFFECT.

Librum mihi dono dedit, *He gave me a book for a present.*

Locum castris delegit, *He chose a place for his camp.*

Reliquit me praesidio urbi, *He left me as a protection to the city, or, to guard the city.*

Hoc mihi curae est, *This is a care to me, or, This is an anxiety to me, I am anxious about this.*

Quanto odio nobis est bellum! What an object of hatred, how hateful, war is to us!

Quanto amori nobis est iustitia, How dear to us is justice!

[101.] 1. Promisit se Belgis auxilio venturum. 2. Nonne pulcherrimum equum dono tibi dedi? 3. Spero adventum Caesaris nobis praesidio futurum. 4. Dixit sibi magnae curae fore ut filia patri redderetur. 5. Nulli mihi sunt milites: amicitia mea periculo multis, paucis praesidio erit. 6. Cum imperatori nuntiatum esset hostes in Haeduorum finibus esse, omnes putaverunt eum praelio diem constituturum. 7. Spero homines intellecturos, quanto sit omnibus odio crudelitas, et quanto amori clementia. 8. Inimici mei simulant se nescire quantae sit mihi curae salus civitatis. 9. Puto illam victoriam magno honori fuisse Mario. 10. Auxilio mihi venit flumen transire conanti.

[102.] 1. I believe that they have chosen a suitable place for the camp. 2. You will not be believed, if you deny that I came to your assistance. 3. I shall leave Balbus to guard the ships. 4. Do you ask who gave me this book for a present? 5. The general has sent two legions to our assistance in¹ besieging the city of Capua. 6. If you have chosen a place for a house, why do you delay? A beautiful house will be an ornament to this city. 7. It is said that you are Caesar's friend: do not think that Caesar's name will be a protection to you. 8. Caesar is dear to the soldiers, but hateful to the citizens. 9. He told me that he was anxious that² his son should learn the art of writing. 10. The friendship of the philosopher was an honour to the king.

¹ Use a participle: compare the last sentence of the preceding exercise.

² *Ut*.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

NOTE ON "CUM" ("WHEN").

1. Remember that *cum* is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive*.

Cum haec dixisset profecti sumus, When he had said this we set out.

2. But *cum* is followed by the present *indicative*.

Cum ille loquitur, tacemus, When he speaks we keep silence.

3. Remember to put the future or future perfect indicative after *cum*, if the time referred to is future.

When I have written the letter, I will come to you,
Cum epistolam scripsero ad te veniam.

[103.] 1. When the temple is finished, it will be an ornament to the city. 2. When I am in the country, I often go into the woods to hear the birds. 3. When he had persuaded his mother, he chose a place for his temple. 4. When you excel the Greek philosophers, you will be allowed to teach us wisdom. 5. When I was in command of the camp, the army was a protection to the city. 6. The soldiers will be a danger to the citizens, if they are allowed to do such things. 7. When it rains, the girls are not allowed to go into the garden. 8. When it rains, I shall give myself up to books. 9. When I was making *my* speech, he would¹ not keep silence. 10. Unless you keep silence, you will not be allowed to stay here.

[104.] 1. When he is asleep, you may not enter the house. 2. When the traveller was returning from the town, a man attacked the horses. 3. "I will kill you," said he,² "unless you give me a considerable sum of money." 4. Being accused of theft, he said that he had

¹ "Was not willing."

² Use *inquit* for "said he."

eaten no food for many days. 5. The judge said that such men ought not to be believed.¹ 6. If they are spared,¹ good men will be harmed.¹ 7. Are not the rich favoured?¹ Are the poor assisted?¹ 8. When you hear a wise man speaking, keep silence. 9. When he has finished his speech, you will be allowed to talk. 10. When he had given me his horse for a present, he returned to his (native) country.

[105.] 1. The general will not be persuaded, unless he sees the prisoner. 2. The brave Balbus was left as a protection to the city. 3. If all of us return, the citizens will rejoice. 4. The temple was built for the gods, who had come to the assistance of the city. 5. We will teach him how dear justice is to Britons. 6. You will not be believed, if you say that you forgot your daughter. 7. I will not harm the man who helped me. 8. Forgetting the murder of his father² he favoured the wicked Balbus. 9. I believe³ that he has sold the dog. 10. On hearing this, they all shouted that they did not believe the messenger.

[106.] 1. So great was the citizens' hatred of the orator, that they raised a great shout. 2. "He is a danger to the city: he did not spare us: he shall not be spared." 3. You cannot persuade me that⁴ you love wisdom. 4. The judge asked the prisoner who had persuaded him to⁴ burn the ships. 5. Do not believe

¹ These verbs take a dative: for instance, "I am believed," *Mihi creditur*.

² "Having forgotten his murdered (pf. pteple.) father."

³ *Credo* is followed by the accusative and infinitive: "I believe that he is fighting," *Credo eum pugnare*. But, "I believe the man," *Credo homini* (dative).

⁴ (a) "He persuaded me that the slave was faithful," *Persuasit mihi servum esse fidelem* (acc. and inf.)

(b) "He persuaded me to sell the slave," *Persuasit mihi ut servum venderem* (ut expressing a purpose).

the man : yesterday he said that he had founded the city of Carthage. 6. If I favour you, I shall do harm to the other citizens. 7. You will easily be persuaded, when you see the man. 8. When we have not enough corn, we march into the territory of the Belgae. 9. I have received the books, which you sent me as a present. 10. He got angry with me, when he found out that my dog had killed a bird.

[107.] 1. Is it friendly to ask such questions? 2. When he had read the letter, he said that he believed me. 3. My slave thinks that this book is an ornament to the table. 4. The general will not be allowed to set out before the winter. 5. When I have eaten this, I will read what you wrote. 6. When you return with your army, you will be a protection to all good *men*. 7. Eight of us set out ; three of us will return. 8. Do not harm the flowers, which I have gathered. 9. He did not know how hateful Catiline was to all of us. 10. I will come, when I can.

[108.] 1. If you excel Caius in valour, why are you unwilling to fight? 2. We did not think he was a soldier : he seemed to be a traveller. 3. A considerable sum of money will be given you, if you lead the army out of the wood. 4. I hope you will all understand how dear my country is to me. 5. I have¹ no money : unless you help me, I must² die. 6. Twenty of us set out from the city at daybreak to see the ships of the Gauls. 7. We persuaded him that the ships would soon enter the harbour. 8. If it does not rain, we shall be able to see something in the evening. 9. I had forgotten the man whom you accused of treason. 10.

¹ Don't use *habeo*.

² Future : compare *cras proficiscendum erit*, "I must set out to-morrow."

Is it of importance to the boys which¹ of us (two) comes?

[109.] 1. I give you this one piece of advice: do not spare the conquered. 2. If you are conquered, you will not be spared. Do not forget the victory of the Carthaginians. 3. If you obey this man, you will be considered foolish. 4. Foolish *people* are easily persuaded: this old man is so wise that he does not believe you. 5. When he perceived that the enemy were unwilling to fight, he determined to advance. 6. When I saw the girl, I asked where *her* mother was. She pretended not to know. 7. When he had come to Italy, he chose a place for a city. He hoped that this city would excel all cities. 8. The judge will not easily be persuaded that you are an ornament to the state. 9. It is not for us to teach the king how hateful war is to all men, how dear is peace. 10. If any one accuses you of treason, your brother will be a protection to you.

XII.

Alexander's Speech to his Soldiers

(in which he vainly endeavours to urge them to follow him into India).

Alexander, cum ad Hypasin fluvium processisset, non modo transire voluit, sed ad Gangen, maximum totius Indiae flumen, pergere; postremo totius orbis imperium appetere. Sed, veritus ut longius progredi vellent, vocatis militibus, ad hunc modum disseruit:

"Non ignoro, milites, multa quae terrere vos possent ab incolis Indiae per hos dies de industria esse iactata. Sed omnia fama tradit maiora vero, neque nos fabulae deter-

¹ *Interest* may be followed by an indirect question: *Mea nihil interest unde venias*, "It is not of importance to me where you come from."

rere possunt. Quamdiu vobiscum in acie stabo, nec mei
10 nec hostium exercitus numero. Vos modo animos mihi
plenos alacritatis ac fiduciae adhibete. Non in limine
operum laborumque nostrorum, sed in exitu, stamus.
Pervenimus ad solis ortum et Oceanum; inde victores,
perdomito fine terrarum, revertemur in patriam. Maiora
15 sunt periculis praemia; dives eadem et inbellis regio
est. Itaque non tam ad gloriam vos duco quam ad
praedam. Per vos gloriamque vestram oro quaesoque,
ne humanarum rerum terminos adeuntem alumnum
commilitonemque vestrum, ne dicam regem, deseratis.
20 Date hoc precibus meis et tandem obstinatum silentium
rumpite. Ubi est ille clamor, alacritatis vestrae index?
ubi ille meorum Macedonum vultus? Non agnosco vos,
milites; nec agnosci videor a vobis. Surdas iamdudum
aures pulso; aversos animos et infractos excitare conor.”
25 Cumque illi in terram demissis capitibus tacere per-
severarent, “Nescio quid” inquit “in vos imprudens
deliqui, quod me ne intueri quidem vultis. In solitu-
dine mihi videor esse desertus; destitutus sum; hosti-
bus deditus. Sed solus quoque ire perseverabo. Scythae
30 Bactrianique erunt mecum, hostes paulo ante nunc
milites nostri. Mori praestat quam precario impera-
torem esse. Ite reduces domos; ite deserto rege
ovantes!”

Ne sic quidem ulli militum vox exprimi potuit.
35 Stabant oribus in terram defixis lacrimisque manantibus.
Rex tandem, victus a militibus, redire constituit.

SECTION 37.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE AND “CUM” (“WHEN”).

Having done this he returned home.

When he had done this he returned home.

These two English sentences have (as nearly as pos-

sible) the same meaning. Similarly, in Latin, there is practically no difference between the two following:—

Hac re confecta, domum rediit.

Cum hanc rem confecisset, domum rediit.

Again—

Me duce, quid timebitis?

Cum ego ducam (fut. ind.), quid timebitis?

Under my guidance, what will you fear?

- [110.] 1. Te dūce multa speramus.
Cum tu dūcis nihil timendum putamus.
2. Me absente quis tibi auxilio venit?
Cum ego abessem, pauperibus non subveniebatur.
3. Imperatore nominato, omnia ad bellum gerendum parabantur.
Cum imperator nominatus esset, speravimus fore ut bellum mox conficeretur.
4. Rege condemnato, iudices odio erant multis.
Cum rex condemnatus esset, nemini iudicium in urbe manere licuit.
5. Tullio loquente, tacendum est.
Cum Tullius loquitur, clamorem tollere nemo audet.
6. Urbe capta, milites sperant se aliquid praemii accepturos.
Cum urbs capta erit, aliquantum vini militibus dabitur.
7. Servis venditis, satis pecuniae mihi erit.
Cum domum vendidero, pecuniam solvere tibi potero.

In Ex. 111 *Cum* ("when") is to be used alternately with the ablative absolute.

- [111.] 1. When the city was taken, the soldiers were allowed to return to Italy.
On the capture of the city, we ordered the citizens to give hostages.
2. When Tullius teaches me, I learn much.
With Tullius for master, I excel the others.
3. When I was sleeping, they surrendered themselves to the enemy.
When I was sleeping, he promised that I would give ten hostages.
4. When I have made my speech, the citizens will not be willing to wage war.
When I have made my speech, I shall go home to write a letter.
5. When I am consul, the citizens hope for peace.
When I am consul, the soldiers return to their country.
6. When he had killed the traveller, he fled to the midst of the woods.
He killed the traveller and escaped to the top of the mountain.
7. When I am general, the Gauls will soon be conquered.
With me for general, will the queen fear the Gauls?

SECTION 38.

WHENCE? WHITHER? WHERE?

How is one to answer the questions—

Unde venis? *Whence do you come?* Quo ibis?
Whither (whither) will you go? Ubi est Caius?
Where is Caius?

Use a preposition with all common¹ nouns, also with the names of countries :

ab urbe venio. ad agros ibo. in templo est.
e Gallia venio. in Italiam ibo. in Britannia est.

Use no preposition with the name of a town :

Roma venio, *I come from Rome* ; Romam ibo, *I shall go to Rome* ; Est Romae, Corinthi, Athenis, Carthagine, *He is at Rome*, etc.

The town *at which* is put in the ablative ; unless it is a singular word of the first or second declension, when it is put in the genitive.

Use no preposition with *domus* and *rus* :

Domo (mea) venio, *I come from home* ; Domum (meam) ibo, *I shall go home* ; Domi (suae) est, *He is at home* ; Rure venio, *I come from the country* ; Rus ibo, *I shall go into the country* ; Rure est, *He is in the country*.

[112.] 1. Romam veniens vidi rure redeuntem senem. 2. Imperatum est militi ut rure statim rediret. 3. Ab urbe Lutetia profectus in Italiam iter fecit, ut urbem Capuam videret. 4. Si ex me quaesiverit num Capuae fuerim, respondebo me domi fuisse. 5. Cum mihi responsum esset amicum me decepisse, Roma Lutetiam discessi. 6. Domo profectus ad urbem venit ; nec quisquam puero persuadere poterat ut ad matrem rediret. 7. Cum Carthagine ab urbe profectus esset, mare transire non ausus est. 8. Spero me Romam ad urbem omnium maximam iturum. 9. Cum Capuae essem, iucundiores vitam egi quam Genavae ago. 10. Si cras pluet, rure redibimus, et domum tuam veniemus.

¹ The difference between common and proper nouns may be best seen from a few instances. Common nouns : city, man, river. Proper nouns : London, Caius, Tiber.

[113.] 1. From Rome he went to Gaul, that he might ask for help from the Haedui. 2. At Geneva he saw our leader, who promised to persuade the Haedui. 3. Having set out from his home by night, he arrived at the foot of the mountain at daybreak. 4. Those who came from the city of Geneva said that our *friend* Balbus would be a protection to the Helvetii. 5. I have come from the country to buy a horse. 6. I have not much money: I must return home in the evening. 7. It was not wise to say that you feared the sailor. 8. When he had learned these facts, the general started from the territory of the Belgae that he might come to the assistance of the fifth legion. 9. Ask the boy whether he comes from home; *and* whether his mother has returned from Carthage. 10. You may inform him that I saw your father at Paris.

SECTION 39.

THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT, INSTRUMENT, ETC.

1. A patre monitus est, *He was warned by his father.*

The person by whom something is done is put in the ablative with the preposition *a, ab*.

2. Hominem gladio interficit, *He kills the man with his sword.*

The instrument with which something is done is put in the ablative without a preposition.

3. Cum rege rediit, *He returned with the king.*

The preposition *cum* must be used when "with" means "in company with."

4. Ablative of time—Eo die, *On that day*; Quarta hora, *At the fourth hour.*

No preposition is required with *hora, dies, annus*, and

other words that express divisions of time, in answering the question, *At what time?* Some other words are also used without preposition to show the time or occasion.

Adventu regis, On the arrival of the king.

Iussu consulis, By order of the consul.

5. Ablative of place—

Terra marique, By (or over) land and sea.

With other words the preposition cannot (as a rule) be omitted: *in horto, in templo*, “in the garden,” “in the temple.”

[114.] 1. *Nuntius a Caesare missus est, ut cives de periculo moneret.* 2. *Si vult a civibus laudari, parendum est legibus civitatis.* 3. *Eodem die, cum rure rediret, certior factus est filiam tertia hora mortuam esse.* 4. *Nisi responderis mihi, hoc gladio te interficiam.* 5. *Eodem anno Genava cum omnibus copiis progressus fines Helvetiorum vastat.* 6. *Rex dixit se omnibus gentibus terra marique imperare.* 7. *Adventu Caesaris speravimus nos urbem facillime capturos.* 8. *Hac re nuntiata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, diem praelio constituit.* 9. *Gladio interfectus est a servo, cui pepercerat.* 10. *Iussu patris hortos emit: quibus in hortis nihil erat florum, arbores paucae.*

[115.] 1. *On Caesar's arrival the Belgae sent messengers to the Germans to ask for horses.* 2. *I promise that, under my leadership, war shall be waged by land and sea.* 3. *When¹ his father died, he went away into the country to live with his mother.* 4. *I asked him by whom the book was written.* 5. *By the general's order the slave was bound by the soldiers.* 6. *Unless you see the man with your eyes, you will not believe me.* 7. *In the fourth year he returned home with his*

¹ Translate both by *cum* and by the ablative absolute.

friend Caius. 8. On our arrival the barbarians will understand how dear to us is our country. 9. As I have followed you for three years over land and sea, I can say that I have been faithful to you. 10. Was it friendly to go away on my arrival? I came home at the fourth hour: at the fifth you started for Carthage.

SECTION 40.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IMPLYING THE NON-FULFILMENT OF THE CONDITION.

1. *If Caius had come yesterday, he would have seen the consul*, Si Gaius heri venisset, consulem vidisset.

“If he had come he would have seen” implies that he did not come, and therefore did not see. In sentences like this, in which it is implied that the condition was not realised, use the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

2. *If Caius were here now, he would tell us everything*, Si Gaius nunc adesset, omnia nobis diceret.

This is a sentence of the same kind, but the time is present not past. “If he were here now he would tell us” implies that he is not here, and therefore is not telling us. In other words, it is implied that the condition is not being realised. The imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

3. *If I had not come, he would have died*, Nisi venissem, mortuus esset.

Translate “If . . . not” by *nisi*, not by *si . . . non*.

[116.] 1. Si ab urbe quarta hora redisset, me vidisset. 2. Si rogasses, respondissem: quid quaereres nescii. 3. Nisi fugisset, proditiōis condemnatus esset: iudice absente ab urbe discessit. 4. Si honestam vitam

ageres, nemo tibi noceret: sed omnibus bonis es periculo. 5. Si eadem ratione bellum gessissem, victus essem. 6. Si ego tibi parentis loco essem, non tibi liceret equos tanti emere. 7. Si avidus esset auri, carmina non conderet. Pauperrimus esse mavult. 8. Si me de periculo certiozem fecisses, te adiuvissem. 9. Nisi amici mei mortui essent, quis me accusare ausus esset? 10. Epistulam non scriberem, nisi scirem te amicorum numero me habere; si adesses, me aliquid monere posses. Quid sit faciendum, nescio.

[117.] 1. If you had come to me yesterday, I would have spared you. 2. On Caesar's arrival the prisoner would have fled, if he had been able. 3. If I had been in command of the cavalry, I should have crossed the Rhine in order to help our allies. 4. If he were in the city, he would be a protection to us. I hope he will return to-morrow. 5. If he did not favour the poor, the judge would be loved by everybody. 6. If I had been at the top of the tree, I should have seen the king returning with the legions. 7. The number of citizens was so great that I could see nothing. 8. If my house were an ornament to the city, I would not sell it. 9. If you had been able to inform me of the plans of Catiline, I would have given you a considerable sum of money. 10. If he were here, he would help us.

XIII.

Arion and the Dolphin.

A.

Vetus et nobilis Arion cantator fidibus fuit, quem rex Corinthi Periander amicum habuit artis gratia. Is a rege profectus est, ut terras inclitas Siciliam atque Italiam viseret. Ubi eo venit, aures omnium

5 delectavit. Postea grandi parta pecunia Corinthum constituit redire. Navem igitur et nautas, ut notiores amicioresque sibi, Corinthios delegit. Sed Corinthii, navi in altum provecta, praedae pecuniaeque cupidi, de necando Arione consilium ceperunt. Ille autem, pernicie
10 intellecta, pecuniam ceteraque sua, ut haberent, dedit, vitam modo sibi ut concederent oravit. Nautae hoc solum concedere voluerunt, ut eum necare per vim suis manibus temperarent; imperabant tamen ut iam statim desiliret praeceps in mare. Tum ille, spe omni vitae
15 perdita, id unum postea oravit, ut, priusquam mortem oppeteret, paterentur vestitum omnem induere et fides capere et canere carmen quod casum illum suum consolaretur. Quod oraverat impetrat; nautae enim audire cupiebant.

B.

20 Finito cantu, cum fidibus ornatuque omni iecit se in profundum. Nautae, haudquaquam dubitantes quin perisset, cursum quem facere coeperant tenuerunt. Sed novum et mirum aliquid accidit. Delphinus repente inter undas adnavit, fluitantique sese homini subdidit,
25 et dorso super fluctus edito tulit, incolumemque eum Taenarum in terram Laconicam devexit. Tum Arion prorsus ex eo loco Corinthum petivit, talemque Periandro regi, qualis delphino vectus erat, inopinanti sese obtulit: rem sicuti acciderat narravit. Rex verba parum
30 credidit; Arionem, quasi falleret, custodiri iussit: nautae, ablegato Arione, interrogati sunt ecquid audivissent in his locis unde venissent de Arione. Dixerunt hominem, cum inde irent, in terra Italia fuisse, illic bene agere et omnium aures delectare. Tum inter haec verba Arion
35 cum fidibus et vestitu, cum quibus in mare exsiluerat, exstitit: nautae, stupefacti convictique, ire infitias non potuerunt.

SECTION 41.

THE WORDS "SOME" AND "ANY."

1. *Aliquis* means "some one," and is used in positive sentences :—*Aliquis venit, Some one has come.*

2. (a) *Quisquam* means "any one," and is used in negative sentences :—

Nego quemquam profectum esse, I deny that any one has set out.

(b) *Ullus* means "any," and is used in negative sentences: it generally has a substantive with it, whereas *quisquam* is used alone :—

Nego ullum hominem profectum esse, I deny that any man has set out.

3. *Quis* is used for "any," "any one," with *ne, si, num, nisi, cum* :—

Si quis audit, If any one hears.

Num quis audit, Does any one hear?

Ne quis audiat, Lest any one hear.

Quis (meaning "any") is thus declined when it has not a substantive agreeing with it :—

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
Nom.	quis	qua	quid	qui	quae	qua (quae)
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quos	quas	qua (quae)
Gen.		cuius		quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.		cui			quibus or	quis
Abl.	quo	qua	quo		quibus or	quis

Agreeing with a substantive, *qui, quae, quod* is generally used instead of the forms given above :—

Si quid dicit, If he says anything, but

Si quod verbum dicit, If he utters any word.

Aliquis and *quisquam* are similarly declined :—

Accepi aliquid, *I have received something.*

Aliquod donum accepi, *I have received some present.*

Ullus is declined like *alter*, genitive *ullius*.

[118.] 1. Balbus dicit se aliquem in horto meo vidisse ; Gaius negat se quemquam vidisse. 2. Si quid¹ cibi habebo, nihil a te petam. 3. Negavit ullum esse periculum in bello gerendo. 4. Ut regem deciperet negavit quidquam auri in templo esse. 5. Neque ullam epistulam a te acceperam, nec quisquam me certiores fecerat de adventu Caesaris. 6. Divitias in aliqua parte urbis conditas esse putavit : qua in parte essent nesciit. 7. Ne quis fugeret, omnes vinciri iussit. 8. Cum dixissem periculum aliquod esse in isto negotio, negavit ille quidquam esse periculi. 9. Cum quis ab urbe redierit, de omnibus rebus certiores fiamus. 10. Si qui nauta nobiscum ibit, nihil erit timendum. Num tantos fluctus unquam vidisti ?

[119.] 1. I saw some one like you in the country : I did not know who it was. 2. He denied that he had spared any one. 3. He denied that he had bought any books at Carthage. 4. I say this lest any one may think that I am pretending. 5. The audacious Tullius says that he will accuse some one : do you know who did it ? 6. I will ask the prisoner whether he has given any answer to the judge. 7. I shall go into the country to-morrow : I hope I shall find some companion. 8. If any citizen hears you, he will not believe you. 9. We saw no one in the temple, nor was *there* any horse

¹ Observe that this use of *quid*, *quidquam*, and *aliquid* with the partitive genitive is very common : *Num quid novi est ?* "Is there any news ?" *Dixit se aliquid auri reperisse*, "He said he had found some gold."

•

in the fields. 10. If any boy kills a bird, the judge will order *him* to be bound.

SECTION 42.

SOME VERBS FOLLOWED BY “UT.”

Many verbs and phrases, which in English are followed by the infinitive, are followed by *ut* in Latin: among these are the following:—

Impero tibi ut facias (*but te facere iubeo*), *I give you orders to do it.*

Rogo te ut facias, *I ask you to do it.*

Peto a te ut facias, *I beg . . .*

Oro te ut facias, *I pray . . .*

Hortor te ut facias, *I urge . . .*

Moneo te ut facias, *I advise . . .*

Persuadeo tibi ut facias, *I persuade . . .*

Mihi curae est ut faciam, *I am anxious . . .*

After these verbs *ut* introduces a final clause, and will therefore be replaced by *ne* when there is a negative with the English infinitive:—

I advise you not to stay, *Moneo te ne maneat.*

[120.] 1. Tullio persuadere debuisti¹ ut Lutetiam nobiscum iret. 2. Putasne te Ariovisto persuadere posse, ut copias e nostris finibus ducat? 3. Num quem rogavisti ut librum tuum emat? 4. Illud unum vos oro, iudices, ne putetis me haec amore pecuniae fecisse. 5. Gaius, unus ex amicis meis, dixit aliquem milites hortatum esse ut imperatorem interficerent. 6. Hoc a

¹ *Debui ire* (“I was bound to go”) is the Latin for “I ought to have gone:” so *potui ire* (“I had the power to go”), “I could have gone.”

vobis peto, ut memineritis nullos mihi amicos esse. 7. Accidit ut in urbe essem cum tu rus ires. 8. Mihi curae est ut tibi persuadeam¹ me duce nihil esse periculi. 9. Ita factum est ut nemo tibi crederet. 10. Ad diem venire et potuisti et debuisti.

[121.] 1. I pray you to believe me: I did this unwillingly. 2. I shall urge him to maintain his opinion. 3. If we persuade him to give himself up, we shall be considered foolish. 4. Did you not advise me to read your friend Tullius' book? 5. You ought² to have given them orders not to besiege the town. 6. I think I can persuade some one to buy the ship. 7. You ought to have² given orders to the cavalry to approach the city by night. 8. I stayed in the country when he went away to Capua. 9. I have been informed that some one has advised King Ariovistus not to attack our camp. 10. You could have² asked him to help us.

SECTION 43.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES REFERRING VAGUELY TO FUTURE TIME.

1. *If he were to conquer the Gauls, I should rejoice, Si Gallos vincat, gaudeam.*

The present³ subjunctive is used in Latin in a conditional sentence of this kind which refers vaguely to the future.

¹ Notice that *monco* and *persuadeo* are followed by the infinitive when they do not introduce a final clause: *Monco te ut eas*, "I warn you to go," but *Moneo te Caesarem profectum esse*, "I warn you that Caesar has set out."

² See note to sentence 1 of last exercise.

³ The perfect subjunctive is also used with nearly the same sense as the present.

2. Compare with this the conditional sentence which refers to present time and implies that the condition is not realised (imperfect subjunctive) :—

Si Gallos vinceret, gauderem, *If he were conquering the Gauls, I should be rejoicing* (it is implied that he is not conquering).

3. Compare also the conditional sentence which refers to future time, but more vividly than sentence 1 :—

Si imperator erit, gaudebo, *If he is general I shall rejoice.*

[122.] 1. Si mihi credas, divitissimum te reddere possim. 2. Si fenestram aperueris, frigus sentias. 3. Si Tullium roges ut tibi debitam pecuniam solvat, tibi irascatur. 4. Qua de causa moneo te ne quid dicas. 5. Si faveas amicis, iudex non creeris. 6. Si quid huic miserrimo homini nocueris, capitis te accusem. 7. Nisi gratias mihi egerit, amicorum numero non habeam. 8. Iamdiu te videre cupio : cum opus confecero rus veniam. 9. Si pacem a nobis petat, obsides dare velit. 10. Si tibi imperet ut urbe excedas, num ei pareas ?

[123.] 1. If you were to be made consul, would you favour your friends? 2. If you were to approach the queen, you would be bound by the soldiers. 3. If you were not to take exercise, you would not be well. 4. If I were to come with you, the dog would not hurt you. Don't be afraid. 5. If you were to say that, you would not be believed. 6. If you were to forget such a friend, you would be despised by everybody. 7. If we should cross the river in the night, we should be able to attack the enemy *while* asleep. 8. It would not much matter to me, if you were to think me foolish. 9. If he were to lead an idle life, he would become very poor. 10. You would persuade Caius to come with us, if you were to promise to be present.

SECTION 44.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—(*Continued*).

Before doing the two following exercises note the difference between—

1. Si adsit, eum laudemus (present subjunctive), *If he were to come (in the future) we should praise him*, and
2. Si adesset, eum laudaremus (imperfect subjunctive), *If he were here (now) we should be praising him.* (It is implied that he is not here.)

[124.] 1. Si rex essem, tibi non parcerem. 2. Si imperator fiam, Haeduos facile vincam. 3. Si ad regem adire auderem, ei persuaderem ut filium tuum liberaret. 4. Nisi canem timeret, non abiret. 5. Si mihi duo talenta des, de his rebus certiore te faciam. 6. Si mihi duae essent legiones, Galli nobis nocere non possent. 7. Si negotio se dedat, ceteris facile praestet. 8. Si mos esset nobis ut victis parceremus, vitam vobis concederem. 9. Si liceat nobis abire liberis, e vestris finibus abeamus, nec quisquam nostrum redeat: aliquantum auri, frumenti multum ad vestram urbem quotannis mittamus. 10. Etiam si vobis credere possem, non liceret mihi more populi Romani vobis parcere.

[125.] 1. If he were to come, I should not speak with him. 2. If he were present, I should say the same. 3. If he were to ask me, I should say that the legions ought to cross the river. 4. If he were to say it, I should not advise you to believe him. 5. If Caesar were to come with a fleet of a hundred ships, we would give up the city to him. 6. If I were in command of the cavalry, I should not fear Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 7. If he understood this he would not

think me wise: he does not know what I have done.
 8. If any one were to see you, you would be condemned, nor would any one be able to help you. 9. If he were living with us, we would not permit him to be idle.
 10. If you were to read the book you would not understand it: I advise you not to buy it.

SECTION 45.

SUMMARY OF THE RULES FOR CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

In the following exercises instances are given of the different kinds of conditional sentences. The following examples will help you to distinguish one kind from the other:—

I. Conditional sentences requiring the subjunctive are of two kinds:

(i.) Those in which the present or perfect subjunctive is used: these refer vaguely to future time, and may be rendered in English by "If he *were* to . . ."

If he were to come, he would see you, Si veniat, te videat; or Si venerit, te viderit.

(ii.) Those in which the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used. In these sentences it is implied that the condition is not being (imperfect tense), or has not been (pluperfect) fulfilled.

If I were rich I would give you some money, Si dives essem, aliquid pecuniae tibi darem. (But I am not rich.)

If I had seen him I should have asked him, Si eum vidissem, rogavissem. (But I did not see him.)

II. A conditional sentence which does not belong to one of the two classes of which instances are given above will require the indicative (or, if an order is given, the imperative). Care must be taken to use the right tense ; thus in the following sentences the English, "*If he comes,*" is translated in three different ways :

1. *If he comes we all rejoice* (i.e. *if ever he comes*), Si ille venit omnes gaudemus.
2. *If he comes my friend will come too* (i.e. *if he shall come*), Si ille veniet, veniet et amicus meus.
3. *If he comes he will make a speech* (i.e. *if he shall have arrived*), Si ille venerit, orationem habebit.
4. Si scripsit, *If he wrote*. Si scribebat, *If he was writing*.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

[126.] 1. Si epistulam scribis, gratulare fratri. 2. Si cras epistulam scribes, nonne narrabis quae fecimus? 3. Si epistulam scripseris, mecum vesperi venire licebit. 4. Si ad me scribas, nihil respondeam. 5. Si quid scriberes, tacerem. 6. Si talia heri scripsisti, pater, cum leget, tibi irascetur. 7. Si quando multitudinem videt, orationem habere vult. 8. Si adfuit, orationem habuit. 9. Si adesset, non taceret. 10. Si venerit, abibo.

[127.] 1. Si orationem habuerit, laudabitur. 2. Si orationem habeat, tibi ridere non liceat. 3. Si ille orationem habuisset, ceteri irati essent. 4. Si mihi pigro esse liceret, hac sub arbore dormirem. 5. Sed pater imperat ut opus conficiam. Quod cum confecero, dormiam. 6. Si me monebis ut consul fiam, te stultum putabo. 7. Si me monuisset te venturum esse, domi mansissem. 8. Si qui deus illum moneat ut hostibus me dedat, deo non pareat. 9. Si adfuisssem, talia non

monuisssem. 10. Nisi tu me monueris ut abeam, in urbe manebo.

[128.] 1. If he were present, he would answer you. 2. If he were to come, you would not dare to say that. 3. If he had been here, you would not have said such things. 4. If he comes, you will not stay here. 5. If *ever* he comes he is a protection to all of us. 6. If he went away, he did not wish to fight. 7. If we had advanced, he would have fled. 8. If you order me, I will go away from you. 9. If you were to order me to go I should not delay. 10. If you had ordered me to remain, I should not have run home.

[129.] 1. If you were present, I should not wish to go away. 2. If you return, I shall rejoice. 3. If you return, the slave will come with you. 4. If we were to give hostages, they would make peace. 5. If we give hostages, they will think us timid. 6. If we had not attacked them, there would have been no danger. 7. If Caesar were in command of the army, he would not order us to return home. 8. If *ever* we give hostages, we promise to obey the enemy. 9. If there should be any danger, he would fly. 10. When he asked me what I feared, I denied that there was any danger.

[130.] 1. I would write a longer letter, did¹ I not know that you will come to town to-morrow. 2. If the enemy cross the river, we shall have² to fight. 3. You do not know how dear glory is to men. 4. If you wish to send any soldiers, we pray you to choose us. 5. If he comes to my house, he will not be allowed to enter. 6. If he were to come in my absence, the slave would help him. 7. If he had set out for Carthage, I should not have been able to see him. 8. If he were (now) present, he would be a protection to us. 9. Have you

¹ "If I did not know."

² Use the gerundive.

seen my *friend* Caius? Do you know where he is?
10. The slave said that Caius was reading a book in the garden.

[131.] 1. If he is reading I dare not approach him.
2. If he ordered you to go away, why did you delay?
3. Do you wish to ask him to spare you? 4. If any one does such things, the general does not spare him.
5. If the general had ordered us to fight, I should have urged the soldiers to defend their country. 6. If five hundred horsemen had been present, we should have conquered the enemy. 7. If you were to ask him, he would deny that he saw any one. 8. If you think I am deceiving you, read the letter which I received yesterday.
9. If he comes out of the camp to ask for peace, we will kill him. 10. If the cavalry of the enemy had fled, we should have conquered.

[132.] 1. If you were to ask him who did it he would not answer you. 2. I advise you not to approach your father: you will never be able to persuade him that you were not present. 3. If he sees it, he will be angry with me. 4. The slave says that some one is in the garden, but Caius says¹ that he can find no one.
5. What does it matter to me whether he is well? 6. If we were to send a messenger, the Haedui would come to our aid. 7. Do not answer, if he asks you whether you have seen me. 8. Did any one see him?—Some one saw him: I do not know who it was. 9. If you see any one, ask him whether he has found my letter. 10. If you persuade him that there is a considerable supply of corn in the territory of the Haedui, he will order us to start in the evening.

[133.] 1. No one can persuade him to kill the miserable dog. 2. If he is believed, he will be a danger to

¹ "Denies that he can find any one."

all of us. 3. As they were returning from the country, they were informed that some one had been made dictator. 4. When you have finished your work don't come home: I will set out for the country to-morrow. 5. If you come to my house, you won't find much food. 6. When he became aware that he was dying, he urged his friends to seek safety *in* flight. 7. If you were general, what would you do? 8. I warn you that there is not enough corn in the camp; that the enemy have seized the mountain; *and* that they will advance to the Rhine at daybreak. 9. If you were believed, why do you try to persuade us? 10. The man who wrote that book was considered wise.

[134.] 1. When he asked me whether I had been present, I answered that somebody had been present. 2. The judge will ask you how big the ship was. 3. When you have read the book, tell me what you think. 4. If he is accused of treason, he will be condemned in accordance with the custom of *our* ancestors. 5. Is it wise to read such books? Is it friendly to sell what I gave you as a present? 6. Don't write: if he wants to ask you anything, he will come. 7. Those who love the king will follow me. 8. We, who know the man, think him very like you. 9. If I had been able to sell my house, I should have gone with the learned Titus to Athens. 10. When you hear the orator speaking, you will think him the wisest of all *men*.

[135.] 1. You, who are afraid of the waves of the sea, cannot go to Gaul to see the great city of Paris. 2. What poet says that the Britons never have been, *and* never will be slaves? 3. If you dare not go alone, you must stay. 4. The old man urged them all to return to the country. 5. Was it wise to lead five hundred soldiers into the territory of the enemy? 6.

Raising a shout, the Haedui attacked the camp, nor would any of us have escaped death, if the cavalry had not come in time. 7. If any poet writes such verses, ought he not to be put to death? 8. If you ask me what I think, you will hear nothing new. 9. If you were to assist him, you would receive a considerable sum of money. 10. On being asked this, the boy denied that there were any mountains in the territory of the Helvetii.

XIV.

*Asking for a Holiday.*SCENE I.—*The Schoolroom.*

Puer I. Iamdudum et animus et caelum et dies invitat ad ludendum!

Puer II. Invitant quidem haec omnia, sed solus praeceptor non invitat.

Puer I. Subornandus est orator quispiam qui veniam extorqueat.

Puer II. Apte quidem dictum "extorqueat"; nam citius clavam extorseris e manu Herculis, quam ab hoc ludendi veniam. At olim illo nemo fuit ludendi avidior.

Puer I. Verum; sed iam ille oblitus est se fuisse puerum. Ad verbera facillimus est et liberalis, hic parcissimus idemque difficillimus.

Puer II. Attamen quis ad eum legatus ire vult?

Puer I. Eat qui volet: ego carere malo quam rogare.

Puer II. Nemo magis accommodatus est ad hanc legationem quam Cocles.

Puer I. Nemo profecto: I, Cocles, ab omnibus nobis magnam initurus gratiam.

Cocles. Equidem experiar: verum si non successerit, nolite conferre culpam in oratorem vestrum!

Pueri. I modo; si te satis novimus impetrabis.

SCENE II.—*The Master's Study.*

Cocles. Salve, praeceptor !

Paedagogus (to himself). Quid sibi vult nugamentum
hominis ? 25

Cocl. Salve, praeceptor venerande !

Paed. (to himself). Insidiosa civitas ! (To the boy).
Satis iam salveo ! Dic quid velis.

Cocl. Totus discipulorum tuorum grex orat ludendi
veniam. 30

Paed. Nihil aliud quam luditis etiam absque venia.

Cocl. Scit tua prudentia vigorem ingeniorum excitari
moderato lusu, quemadmodum nos docuisti ex
scriptore Latino.

Paed. Sane ut istud tenes quod pro te facit ! Laxa- 35
mento opus est iis, qui vehementer laborant ;
vobis qui segniter litteris studetis, et acriter
luditis freno magis opus est quam laxatis
habenis.

Cocl. Adnitimur pro viribus ; si quid adhuc cessatum 40
est, post diligentia sarcietur.

Paed. Scio quam non sit tutum tibi credere ; tamen hic
periculum faciam quam sis bonae fidei. Et si
dederis verba, posthac nequidquam mecum
egeris. 45

SCENE III.—*The Schoolroom.*

Cocl. Exoravi, quamquam aegre !

Pueri. O lepidum caput ! omnes amamus te plurimum !

SECTION 46.

"QUI" INTRODUCING A FINAL CLAUSE.

Venerunt qui nuntiarent, *Men came to bring news.*

Nihil habeo quod scribam, *I have nothing to write.*

Qui is often used with the subjunctive to express a

purpose: *Venerunt qui nuntiarent*, "There came men who were to bring news." *Qui* with the indicative gives a different sense: *Venerunt qui nuntiaverunt*, *Men came who brought news*.

(Every sentence contains an instance of *qui* used in a final sense.)

[136.] 1. *Ad imperatorem adierunt, qui pacem peterent.* 2. *Viginti milites in Haeduorum fines misit, qui frumentum poscerent.* 3. *His de rebus non multa habeo, quae dicam.* 4. *Cum domo abire constituissem, epistulam scripsi quam legeres.* 5. *Nihil novi erat, quod scriberem.* 6. *Domum reperire volo, quam parva pecunia emam.* 7. *Flores mihi in horto nulli sunt, quos ad te mittam.* 8. *Quis est quem rogem ut mihi subveniat?* 9. *Nihil habeo quod te moneam; quod tibi optimum videbitur, faciendum erit.* 10. *Lapides iaciebat, quibus pueros terreret.*

(*Ut* is not to be used in this exercise.)

[137.] 1. *Men* were sent to ask whence he came. 2. He left Labienus to finish the war. 3. Concerning the manners of the Romans I have many things to say. 4. I have no money to give you: don't ask me these questions. 5. I have no slaves to send with you: if you dare not go alone, I will come myself. 6. I sent a boy to inform you of the arrival of the third legion. 7. When the city is built, we shall have to find¹ a wise man to rule us. 8. If I give you a book to read, will you promise to return it? 9. There are none to help us: I ask you what is to be¹ done. 10. *Men* came to ask whether the king was dead.

¹ Gerundive.

SECTION 47.

"Quo," FINAL.

Hoc mihi dixit, quo facilius intellegerem, *He told me this that I might the more easily understand.*

Quo is used instead of *ut* in a final sentence which contains a comparative: it is followed by the subjunctive.

We have seen that *qui* is used with the subjunctive to express a purpose. *Epistulam scripsi quam legeres*, "I wrote a letter for you to read," is equivalent to *Epistulam scripsi ut eam legeres*, "I wrote a letter that you might read it." Similarly, *quo* (the ablative of *qui*) is equivalent to *ut eo*, and means "in order that in this way," or "through this." The sentence at the beginning of this section might be re-written, *Hoc mihi dixit ut eo facilius intellegerem*, "He told me this *in order that in this way*," or "*in order that so* I might more easily understand."

[138.] 1. Quo gratior esset militibus, promisit se, urbe capta, multum vini eis daturum. 2. Et haec et multa alia promisit, ut cives deciperet. 3. Domum suam pulchriorem faciendam curavit, quo facilius venderet. 4. Iuvenis simulat se cupidum esse periculi, quo fortior videatur. 5. Quo facilius intellegere possitis quid sit faciendum, ea quae vidi dicam. 6. Ad magistrum miserunt puerum, qui quaereret quid faciendum esset. 7. Quo minus sit periculi, ipse veniam. 8. Quo facilius scribas, abibo; si servum miseris, redibo. 9. Multos servos emit, quo pigriorem vitam agat. 10. Quo sapientior habeatur, simulat se librum scripsisse.

(*Ut* is not to be used in this exercise.)

[139.] 1. I will help you, that you may learn the more easily. 2. He stayed at home for three hours,

that he might write a longer letter. 3. In order that he might lead a better life, he went away from these men. 4. That our *men* might fight more bravely, I denied that I had seen any horsemen in the enemy's camp. 5. Open the window, that we may more easily see the soldiers. 6. In order that I might build a larger house, I sold all my horses. 7. *Men* approached to¹ ask for money. 8. You ought to read the works of Virgil, that you may write better verses. 9. I will pick some flowers to send to my sister. 10. The slave said that he had not seen any books.

SECTION 48.

“QUIDAM.”

Quidam means “a certain one.” It is declined *quidam*, *quae-dam*, *quod-dam*;² genitive, *cuius-dam*, etc.

Note the difference between *quidam* and *aliquis*. *Est aliquis in templo* means “There is some one in the temple.” (This does not imply that the speaker knows anything about the “some one.”)

Est quidam in templo means “There is a certain person in the temple.” (That is to say, “There is some one in the temple, of whom I could tell you more if I wished.”)

Before doing the exercise see section 41 on the words “some” and “any.”

[140.] 1. Venit ad imperatorem miles quidam, qui diceret equites hostium adesse. 2. Vidi aliquem domi tuae; quis esset, nesciebam. 3. Epistulam ad amicum quemdam scribo; eius nomen dicere nolo. 4. Erat apud me nauta quidam, qui talia narrabat ut servi adire non auderent. 5. Hic dicit se mihi aliquid auri dedisse; ego autem nego me quidquam accepisse. 6. Graecus quidam haec scripsisse dicitur. 7. Nisi qui nauta nobis

¹ Use *qui*.

² Or (without a substantive) *quid-dam*.

subvenerit, moriemur. 8. Quo celerius venirem, promisit se mihi aliquid praemii daturum. 9. Cum in illa urbe essem, Ciceronis opera cum Balbo quodam, doctissimo viro, legebam. 10. Accidit ut amicus quidam meus eodem tempore Carthagini esset.

[141.] 1. In the island of Sicily there is a certain city, which the Greeks founded. 2. A certain slave informed me that *there* was some one in the garden. 3. Nobody thought that there was any cause for¹ fear. 4. In the middle of the night a certain Carthaginian came to our camp, to say that the city was being besieged. 5. If any one wishes to help us, he ought to set out at daybreak. 6. I will come to-morrow with certain friends to see you. 7. That they might the more easily deceive me, they sent *a man named Sulla*² to my house. 8. He asked me to give some money, that he might be able to build a larger house. 9. If you think that the house will be an ornament to the city, you ought to give him much gold. 10. If any messenger comes from the camp, I will send a slave to you.

XV.

Androclus and the Lion.

A.

Huius rei, Romae cum forte essem, spectator fui. In Circo Maximo multae erant saevientes ferae, aut forma aut ferocia excellentes. Sed praeter alia omnia leonum immanitas admirationi fuit, praeterque omnes ceteros unus. Is unus leo corporis vastitudine, terrifi-
coque fremitu comisque fluctuantibus, animos omnium

¹ Genitive. Note that a substantive depending on another substantive is always put in the genitive: so, “Grief for his dead father” is *Dolor mortui patris*.

² Say, “A certain Sulla.”

in sese converterat. Introductus erat inter complures ceteros ad pugnam bestiarum datos servus, cui nomen Androelo fuit. Hunc ille leo ubi vidit procul, repente
10 quasi admirans stetit; ac deinde sensim atque placide, tamquam noscicans hominem, ad Androclum accedit. Tum caudam, more adulantium canum, blande movet, hominisque se corpori adiungit, cruraque eius et manus prope iam exanimati metu lingua demulcet. Androclus,
15 inter illa tam atrocis ferae blandimenta, amissum animum recuperat, leonemque contuetur. Tum, quasi mutua recognitione facta, laeti et gratulantes videbantur homo et leo.

B.

Ea re tam admirabili maximi populi clamores excitati sunt; accersitusque a Caesare Androclus interrogatus est cur ille atrocissimus leo uni pepercisset. Tum Androclus rem miram narrat. "Cum provinciam," inquit, "Africam meus dominus obtineret, ego ibi iniquis eius et cotidianis verberibus ad fugam sum coactus; et,
25 quo mihi a domino tutiores latebrae forent, in camporum et arenarum solitudines concessi; nam, si defuisset cibus, consilium fuit mortem aliquo modo quaerere. Tum sole medio, specum quandam nactus remotam, in eam me penetro. Neque multo post ad eandem specum venit
30 hic leo, debili uno et cruento pede, gemitus edens ob dolorem vulneris. Primo quidem conspectu advenientis leonis territus mihi animus est. Sed postquam leo videt me procul delitescens mitis accessit, et sublatum pedem ostendit mihi et porrigit, quasi opis petendae gratia.
35 Ibi ego stirpem ingentem vestigio pedis eius haerentem revelli, et sine magna iam formidine siccavi penitus atque detergi cruorem. Tunc mea medicina levatus, pede in manibus meis posito, recubuit et quievit, atque ex eo die triennium totum ego et leo in eadem specu

eodemque et cibo viximus. Nam quas venabatur feras ⁴⁰ membra opimiora ad specum mihi suggerebat, quae ego, ignis copiam non habens, meridiano sole tosta edebam."

C.

"Sed, ubi me vitae illius ferinae iam pertaesum est, leone venatum profecto, reliqui specum, et, viam ferme tridui permensus, a militibus visus adprehensus ⁴⁵ que sum, et ad dominum ab Africa Romam deductus. Is me statim rei capitalis damnandum dandumque ad bestias curavit."

Quae cum dixisset, dimissus est Androclus et poena solutus, leoque ei suffragiis populi donatus. Postea ⁵⁰ videbamus Androclum et leonem, loro tenui revinctum, urbe tota circum tabernas ire: donatur aere Androclus; floribus spargitur leo; omnes ubique obvii dicunt: "Hic est leo, hospes hominis; hic est homo, medicus leonis."

SECTION 49.

"QUOMINUS."

Nihil me impediit quominus scriberem, *Nothing prevented me from writing* (*Nothing prevented me that so ["quo" = "ut eo"] I might not [minus] write.*

Non recusabo quominus epistulam legas, *I will not object to your reading the letter* (*I will make no objection in order that you may not read the letter*).

Quominus is chiefly used after *impedio*, "I hinder," *recuso*, "I object," and some other verbs of kindred meaning. *Quominus* is not generally used unless the verb on which it depends has a negative with it.¹

¹ *Impedio* (for instance) without a negative is generally followed by *ne*, not *quominus*: *Tuae lacrimae me impediunt, ne plura dicam,*

The origin of this use of *quominus* may be seen by comparing the following sentences:—

Quo minus ametis hominem, narrabo ea quae fecit,
*That you may like the fellow less, I will tell you
 what he did.*

(“That you may like him less” is nearly equivalent to “That you may not like him at all.”)

Non recuso quominus ametis hominem, *I make no
 objection to your liking the man.*

(“I do not make objections *in order that* you may not like him.” *Minus* here simply means “not.”¹)

[142.] 1. Quo fiat sapientior, multa discere debet.
 2. Quo minus periculi esset, victis imperavit ut obsides darent. 3. Quo minus admiremini hominem, audite ea quae dico. 4. Nemo recusabit quominus in Galliam proficiscaris. 5. Nihil eum impedit quominus miles fiat. 6. Negavi eum ulla lege impediri quominus consul crearetur. 7. Num recusare debui quominus huic homini miserrimo subvenirem? 8. Si quid auxilii promittas, bellum conficere possim. 9. Non recuso quominus me stultum putetis. 10. Venerunt qui imperatorem orarent ut obsides redderet.

[143.] 1. Did anything hinder you from coming? (Did anything hinder you *in order that* you might not come?) 2. He could not object to my writing a letter. 3. *Men* came to² ask me whether I had seen you. 4. I answered that I did not know; that some one had set out in the evening. 5. If they had believed me,

“Your tears prevent me from saying more.” The negative is often implied: *Quid impedit?* “What prevents?” will be followed by *quominus* if the answer “Nothing” is expected.

¹ *Minus* is not uncommon in this sense: *minus intellexi* = “I didn’t quite understand.”

² Use *qui*.

they would have found you. 6. I have no objection to your hearing my song. 7. The shouts of those men shall not hinder me from defending my friend. 8. The death of the general did not prevent us from finishing the war. 9. The Gauls said they had no objection to obeying my brother Quintus. 10. I will make no objection to your adopting this plan, if you will promise to return in time.

SECTION 50.

"QUIN."

Quin means "who . . . not," "but that" or "that," "why . . . not," and is followed by the subjunctive.

1. *Nemo est quin hoc sciat, There is no one who does not know this.*
2. *Nihil causae est quin abeas, There is no reason why you should not go away.*
3. *Non dubito quin feceris, I don't doubt (but) that you have done it.*
4. *Hoc dicere nunquam possum quin rideam, I can never say this without laughing (but that I laugh).*

Before you attempt the exercise note in what various ways *quin* is translated : note especially sentence 4.

Quin is only used after negative expressions or questions which imply a negative answer. It is very commonly used after *non dubito*, *non dubium est*, *nemo est*, and a few other expressions in which the negative is emphatic.

Quin (1) is either the equivalent of the relative (generally in the nom. masc.) combined with a negative. Sentence 1 is an instance of this very common use. *Nemo est quin sciat* = *Nemo est qui nesciat*. (2) Or it is, not a relative pronoun, but a conjunction, as in the

other three sentences; it is then derived from *quī* (an old form of the ablative of *qui*, *quae*, *quod*), meaning "in which way," "for which reason," "by which means."

[144.] 1. Non dubito quin mecum ire velit. 2. Nemo nostrum¹ est quin sciat Caesarem imperatorem Romanum fuisse. 3. Nunquam tam miser est quin tecum loqui velit. 4. Quis in urbem venit quin audiret te condemnatum esse? 5. Huius orationem nunquam audio quin admirer. 6. Num quid causae est quin tres dies rure maneam? 7. Nemo bonus est quin sit iustus. 8. Nunquam domum in eo quin me rogent servi ut plus cibi dem. 9. Neminem in urbe vidi quin mihi gratularetur, nec cuiquam persuadere potui me miserimum omnium hominum esse. 10. Nihil me impedit quominus navem solvam.

(*Quin* should be used in every sentence in this exercise.)

[145.] 1. I do not doubt but that you have seen him. 2. There is no one among us¹ who has not heard this. 3. I perceive that it is doubtful to no one that he is dead. 4. Do not doubt that I believe you. 5. No one can be wise without being good. 6. What reason is there why I should not go to Italy in the spring? 7. I never see him without thinking that such a man is an honour to the city. 8. I deny that there is any one among¹ you who has not heard that Caesar conquered the Gauls. 9. No one started from the camp that night without being wounded by the enemy; nor would any one have returned, if the cavalry had not come to our aid. 10. There was no one in Gaul who did not obey Caesar.

¹ "Among us," *nostrum*; "among you," *vestrum*.

SECTION 51.

VERBS OF FEARING.

Vereor ne hostes nos vincant, *I fear that the enemy will conquer us.*

Vereor ut hostes vincamus, *I fear that we shall not conquer the enemy.*

Vereor (or timeo) ne . . . *I fear that . . .*

Vereor (or timeo) ut . . . *I fear that . . . not.*

Notice that the present subjunctive may refer either to present or to future time after a verb of fearing. *Vereor ut hostes vincamus* may mean either "I fear that we shall not conquer the enemy," or "I fear that we are not conquering the enemy." In the same way, *Veritus sum ut hostes vinceremus* may mean either "I feared that we should not conquer the enemy," or "I feared that we were not conquering the enemy."

[146.] 1. Vereor ne dicat haec sibi odio esse. 2. Omnes putaverunt fore ut urbs caperetur; nec quisquam erat quin timeret ne nostri vincerentur. 3. Veriti¹ ut satis frumenti haberent, promiserunt se magnam pecuniam nobis daturos. 4. Cum haec dixisset, omnes timuimus ne se hostibus dederet. 5. Timeo ut verum dixerit; turpissimus enim esse dicitur. 6. Haec si feceris, vereor ne condemneris. 7. Quis est quin timeat ut satis pecuniae habeat? 8. Vereor ut barbari eis parcant, qui frumentum ierunt. 9. Nonne mittendi sunt qui pacem petant? Nonne aliquantum auri promittendum? 10. Vēni quaesitum sororem quae in hac terra esse dicebatur; vereor ne iam mortua sit.

[147.] 1. I fear that he has not taken the city. I fear that the army will be conquered. 2. We were afraid that he was leading an idle life; but it is said

¹ Fearing.

that he has finished his work. 3. I feared that the dog, which I had bought, would not obey me. 4. I am afraid that I shall not be able to return in time. I will come if I can. 5. I fear that the queen will order me to set out for Asia. 6. The same night *men* came to¹ warn us not to cross the river. 7. A messenger said that some one had escaped from the camp. 8. We feared that he would inform the enemy of our plans. 9. We sent fifty horsemen to¹ look for him. 10. I am afraid that they will not find him in the wood.

SECTION 52.

"DUM."

1. Dum urbem obsidemus, rex mortuus est, *While we were besieging the city, the king died.*

2. Exspectavi dum abiret, *I waited until he went away.*

1. *Dum*, when it means "while," is used with the indicative. The present tense is generally used, even when past time is referred to.²

2. *Dum* with the subjunctive means "until"³ or "till."

¹ *Qui*.

² The more advanced student should note the following distinction: (1) When *dum* means "in the course of the time that . . ." it is followed by the present indicative. Sentence 1 above is an example. (2) But if *dum* means "throughout the time that," "so long as," it is followed by whatever tense of the indicative suits the sense: "All the time that you were away he would do nothing," *Dum tu aberas nihil facere volebat*. This use of *dum* is not illustrated in the following exercises.

³ *Dum* with the subjunctive really means rather more than "until." For instance, sentence 2 (above) means "I waited with a view to his going away," or "I waited for him to go." An aim or purpose is implied. Otherwise the indicative is used: *Dum ille rediit, putavimus te Capuae esse*, "Until he returned, we thought you were at Capua." Here *dum* merely marks the time.

[148.] 1. Dum redeas, hic manebo. 2. Dum haec loquimur, interea ad templum Dianae ventum est. 3. Quod cum vidisset “Quid impedit” inquit “quominus ineamus? Dubitari non potest quin pulcherrimum sit templum.” 4. Dum haec geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est collem occupatum esse. 5. Haec cum scripsissem, exspectavi dum nuntius rediret. 6. Dum milites venirent moratus, intellexit se occasionem amisisse. 7. Patre absente, promittere non poteram. Mercator autem exspectare noluit, dum ille rediret. 8. Nuntium Carthaginem misi qui amicum meum certiores faceret Graecum quemdam hortos emere velle. 9. Mānē dum dormiat. Cum dormiet abire nobis licebit. 10. Quo facilius corpus exerceas, rure vivendum erit.

[149.] 1. While we were preparing our forces, we were informed that the leader of the Carthaginians was dead. 2. Until he returns, I will read the book which he gave me for a present. 3. While he was asking the others these questions, I tried to escape. 4. I did not hear what you said: while you were making your speech, I was talking with my *friend* Balbus. 5. Stay in the city until you receive a letter from your father. 6. While you were away, she could not be prevented from escaping. I fear that she will not return. 7. Is there any reason why you should not be condemned? 8. While the Belgae were sleeping, we crossed the river. 9. We waited till they slept; when we had crossed the Rhine, we attacked the camp. 10. Do not think me foolish. Was it not wise to give the men these orders?

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

[150.] 1. I fear that you are not well. 2. Do not go to the city to-day, if it rains. 3. Stay at home till

the doctor comes. 4. When he comes, he will tell you whether you may go. 5. I cannot object to doing what you wish. 6. There is no doubt that you are adopting a very good plan. 7. A slave came to ask me to return. 8. While he was writing letters, the boys returned. 9. I advise you not to come with us. 10. I warn you that we cannot defend you.

[151.] 1. We will go into the country, that I may the more easily teach you this art. 2. If any messengers come, I will write you a letter. 3. Did you persuade him to obey me? 4. Some god is said to have built the city. 5. If any girl were to pick my flowers, I should be angry. 6. We shall be angry with you, if you do not stay till we return. 7. If any one had ordered me to set sail, I should not have obeyed him. 8. I am afraid that you will forget me, when you return to Italy. 9. Do you remember Caius? While you were at Paris, he came to my house. 10. I will give you some money that you may buy more flowers.

[152.] 1. It does not matter how much gold you have: it matters much what¹ sort of a man you are. 2. There is no one who has not often heard this song. 3. Do you think that I shall object to your going into the country? 4. I fear that you do not know me. 5. If you knew me, you would not ask me that question. 6. If I were to ask you for money how much would you give me? 7. I have been informed that a certain *man named* Balbus has written a very bad song. 8. I advised the girl not to sing, that she might not be considered foolish. 9. There is no doubt that he is a very clever man. 10. He always makes such great speeches that I dare not stay.

[153.] 1. Stay till he comes. If he comes, no one

¹ "What sort of a man," *qualis*.

will prevent you from going away. 2. I cannot object to sending the horses. 3. I am afraid that you will not understand what I am saying. 4. If I were to ask you what I have said, what would you answer? 5. I sent a slave to ask whether you were well. 6. If she loved him, would she write such a letter? 7. If you return to-day you will see my sister at your house. 8. When I had persuaded him to set out, *a man* came to bring the news that the war was finished. 9. While we were preparing our food in the evening, the barbarians attacked the camp. 10. Nor would any one among¹ us have eaten the food prepared, if the wise Labienus had not come to our aid.

[154.] 1. If I were well, I would come with you. 2. There is no one who does not advise you to adopt this plan. 3. While you were away in Italy, I was informed about the matter. 4. I cannot doubt that you ought to sell the horse. 5. If you wait till my ship arrives at the harbour, I will pay you the sum of money which I owe. 6. I will give you enough gold, when we have conquered the enemy. 7. I am afraid that you will not believe me. 8. If you wish to persuade us that you were present, tell us what you saw. 9. I want to know whether the prisoner spoke with you. 10. Does any one doubt that you wrote the letter.

[155.] 1. Has any philosopher dared to say that poets ought to be despised? 2. I saw a certain friend *of mine* in the city, who asked me to go into the country to-morrow. 3. As I had finished my work, I could not object to going away. 4. I shall wait till you come to the city of Paris. 5. He denied that any one had been made dictator. 6. He thought that I should be made king. 7. While I was reading, a certain *man* came to

¹ Say "of us."

see me. 8. He asked me whether I was willing to buy the house. 9. I must stay in the city till he answers me. 10. I will send a boy to ask what they want to do.

[156.] 1. He denied that he had written any letters to the girl. 2. If we had any books, we would give them to you. 3. While they were binding me, I said that I was a Roman citizen. 4. I cannot object to sparing the girl: the father will not be spared. 5. Nothing will prevent me from condemning the man. 6. Remain here till you are informed of the plans of Pompeius. 7. Will a wise man be persuaded to believe you? 8. If you encourage the soldiers, they will be willing to set out. 9. That he might the more easily deceive me, he pretended that he knew my mother. 10. He is so foolish that he does not know that Sicily is an island.

[157.] 1. Don't ask me who did it. If you ask, I will not answer. 2. If they had given hostages, in accordance with the custom of the Roman people, we would have made peace with them. 3. If you were to go to the island of Sicily, you would see the temples which the Greeks built. 4. It cannot be doubted that this is an honour to you. 5. He never sees me without praising your virtue. 6. Having chosen a place for the camp, he sent five hundred men into the territory of the Helvetii to get corn. 7. I am afraid that there will not be enough food till they return. 8. We sent ten horsemen to inform the general of the approach of the enemy. 9. If he were king he would wage many wars, that he might seem the braver. 10. If you know the man, what prevents you from writing this letter?

SECTION 53.

ORATIO OBLIQUA, OR REPORTED SPEECH.

What is meant by the term Oratio Obliqua.

There are two ways of reporting a man's words. If we wish to report the fact that a man has used the words "I am king," we may say either

- (1) *He said "I am king,"* or
- (2) *He said that he was king.*

In (1) we quote the man's own words without any change whatever, and put them in inverted commas.

*"Rex sum" inquit*¹ (words quoted).

In (2) we do not quote the speaker's words exactly as they were uttered, but we give the substance of what was said, introducing it by "he said that," or some similar expression.

Dixit se regem esse (words reported: Oratio Obliqua).

It will be seen from the following example that when reported in this way a sentence is considerably changed in English, especially in its verbs and pronouns.

(Original words, or Oratio Recta): "*I will go to the house of which you told me.*"

(The same reported, Oratio Obliqua): He said that *he would go to the house of which she had told him.*

When we use the term Oratio Obliqua we always mean this second way of reporting speech and not the

¹ *Inquit* (not *dixit*) is used for "he said" when the actual words of the speaker are quoted.

first, in which the exact words of the speaker are quoted ; and we include under the same term not only reported speech, but also reported thought,—in fact all sentences introduced by such expressions as “he said that,” “thought that,” “felt or perceived or understood that,” “exclaimed that . . .”

Rules for Oratio Obliqua in Latin.

1. Put the accusative and *infinitive* after verbs of saying, thinking, etc.

He said that he was well, Dixit se valere.

(With this rule you are of course thoroughly familiar.)

2. Put the *subjunctive* in all subordinate clauses. Subordinate clauses are introduced by the relative and such words as “when,” “if,” “where.”

*He said that he had read the book which I had sent him,
Dixit se legisse librum quem misissem.*

(This rule is entirely new to you, and you will find it a little difficult to observe, as we have no corresponding rule in English.)

It follows from these two rules that the *indicative will not be used at all* except in the verb which introduces the Oratio Obliqua (for instance, *dixit* in the sentence above).

3. The pronouns must be changed if they are changed in the English.

I am well, (Ego) valeo.

He said that he was well, Dixit se valere.

Note that the subject of the infinitive must be expressed ; you may leave out *ego* : you cannot leave out

se. Some other words will be changed, but common sense will guide you : for instance—

I have the money here now.

He said that he had the money there then.

4. The tense of the verb—

(a) In the principal clause write the same tense of the infinitive as you have of the indicative in the Oratio Recta : for instance—

Oratio Recta.

Oratio Obliqua.

Scribo (present).

Dixit se scribere (present).

Scribam (future).

Dixit se scripturum (future).

Scripsi (perfect).

Dixit se scripsisse (perfect).

(b) In the subordinate clause follow the English as closely as you can, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses.

If the verb which introduces the Oratio Obliqua is past (and this is the commoner case, and the only one that we shall deal with here), then by the rules of sequence *the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are the only possible tenses.*

<i>Present,</i>	in subordinate	will become <i>imperfect</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	clauses of the	<i>subjunctive</i> in Oratio
or <i>Future</i>	Oratio Recta	Obliqua.

<i>Perfect,</i>	in subordinate	will become <i>pluperfect</i>
<i>Future Perfect,</i>	clauses of the	<i>subjunctive</i> in Oratio
or <i>Pluperfect</i>	Oratio Recta	Obliqua.

Examples—

O. R.¹ Scripsi id quod legis, *I wrote what you are reading.*

O. O.² Dixit se scripsisse id quod legerem, *He said that he wrote what I was reading.*

¹ O. R. = Oratio Recta.

² O. O. = Oratio Obliqua.

O. R. Gaia veniet tecum si opus confecerit, *Gaia will come with you if she has finished her work.*

O. O. Dixerunt Gaiam cum illo venturam si opus confecisset, *They said that Gaia would come with him if she had finished her work.*

(For further instances see the Exercises.)

[158.] 1. Librum, quem amicus mihi dedit, ad te mittam.

Promisit se librum, quem sibi amicus dedisset, ad me missurum.

2. Qui regem secuti sunt, a barbaris sunt interfecti.

Certior factus sum eos, qui regem secuti essent, a barbaris interfectos esse.

3. Qui mortem timent non sunt laudandi.

Philosophus scripsit eos qui mortem timerent non esse laudandos.

4. Si matrem amas, epistulam scribere debuisti.

Magister dixit puerum, si matrem amaret, epistulam scribere debuisse.

5. Cum Tullius, vir sapientissimus, loquitur, semper audio.

Dixit se, cum Tullius vir sapientissimus loqueretur, semper audire.

6. Agrum, quem tu vendidisti, Balbus emit.

Dixit Balbum emisse agrum quem vendidissem.

7. Si pluit, non licet puellae in hortum ire.

Negavit puellae licere in hortum ire, si plueret.

8. Milites qui me duce vicerunt summo honore digni sunt.

Imperator putavit milites, qui se duce vicissent, summo honore dignos esse.

- [159.] 1. I have done what you ordered.
He said that he had done what I had ordered.
2. I will give you as a present a book, which I have written.
He said that he would give me as a present a book, which he had written.
3. The plan, which my brother has adopted, is most foolish.
I thought that the plan, which my brother had adopted, was most foolish.
4. Those who lead an idle life ought not to be praised.
I thought that those who led an idle life ought not to be praised.
5. Those who heard this laughed.
He noticed that those who had heard this laughed.
6. I have not read the letter which my father wrote.
He denied that he had read the letter which his father had written.
7. If this man is the king, I fear nothing.
The prisoner said he feared nothing if that man was the king.
8. I can't promise to read the book which you have written.
He said he could not promise to read the book which Caius had written.

(Translate into English, and re-write each sentence in
Oratio Recta in Latin.)

- [160.] 1. Dixit se milites, quos ad gloriam saepe duxisset, ad praedam nunc ducere. 2. Dixit se ad

urbem reditum, qua in urbe natus esset. 3. Dixit se miserrimum hominem novisse, qui nihil cibi haberet. 4. Negavit se facere posse ea quae rogavisset. 5. Speravisti pueros, qui te magistro didicissent, ceteris praestituros. 6. Intellexit longe alia ratione gerendum esse bellum quam antea gestum esset. 7. Magna voce clamavit interficiendum esse regem qui talia faceret. 8. Imperavit ut omnes qui pugnare nollent e castris exirent.

(Do each sentence, first in Oratio Recta, then in Oratio Obliqua: for instance, when you come to sentence 3, translate first the Oratio Recta, "What he is saying is true," and then the Oratio Obliqua as it stands in the book.)

[161.] 1. He said¹ he would kill those who had helped the king. 2. He said that he would pay the money which he owed me on the third day. 3. I thought that what he was saying was true. 4. Every one thought that the man who had killed the girl would be condemned. 5. The general said that the soldiers who had been sent into the territory of the Haedui must be helped. 6. He said that he every day expected the corn which the Haedui had promised. 7. Caesar was informed that there was a man in the city who had persuaded the citizens not to give any corn to our men. 8. Caesar said, that if this was true, the man must be put to death.

¹ "He said he would," or "He said *that* he would": "that" is often omitted in English.

SECTION 54.

QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. In Oratio Obliqua questions have the verb in the *subjunctive*.¹ If the verb introducing the reported speech is past—and this is the only case we shall deal with—the verb will be in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect*. For instance :

O.R. Te exspectavi. Cur non venisti? *I expected you. Why did you not come?*

O.O. Dixit se illam exspectavisse. Cur non venisset? *He said that he had expected her. Why had she not come?*

O.R. Nihil video. Quid est timendum? Cur fugis? *I see nothing. What is there to fear? Why do you run away?*

O.O. Dixit se nihil videre. Quid esset timendum? Cur fugeret? *He said that he saw nothing. What was there to fear? Why was he running away?*

2. A command is put in the *imperfect subjunctive* (if the verb introducing the reported speech is in a past tense).

O.R. *I am setting out at once. Come, do not delay.*
Iam proficiscor. Venite, ne morati sitis.

O.O. Dixit se iam proficisci. Venirent, ne morarentur. *He said that he was setting out at once. Let them come, let them not delay.*

¹ The more advanced student should note that some questions are put in the accusative and infinitive, not the subjunctive. This is commonly the case (1) if the question would in the Oratio Recta be in the first or third person ; or (2) if the question is rhetorical, *i.e.* if no answer to the question is expected. For instance, one may say, "What *are* you afraid of?" (*Quid vereris?*), meaning "You ought not to be afraid ; there is nothing to fear." This would be rendered in Oratio Obliqua by *Quid cum vereri?*

- [162.] 1. Quid petis? Cur in nostra castra venisti?
Quid peteret? Cur in sua castra venisset?
2. E castris exi: ad urbem, unde venisti, redi.
E castris exiret: ad urbem unde venisset rediret.
3. Ne credideris homini: nonne certior factus es
eum regem decepisse?
Ne crederet homini: nonne certior factus esset
eum regem decepisse?
4. Quid rogas? Num quid a me exspectas?
Quid rogaret? Num quid a se exspectaret?
5. Brevis est nox: prima luce proficiscendum
est: cum potestis, dormite.
Brevem esse noctem: prima luce profici-
scendum esse: cum possent, dormirent.
6. Cur talem equum emisti? Unde pecuniam
accepisti? Putavi te nihil habere.
Cur talem equum emissem? Unde pecuniam
accepissem? Se putavisse me nihil habere?
7. Nonne vultis me duce in medios hostes im-
petum facere?
Nonne vellent ipso duce in medios hostes im-
petum facere?
8. Nihil novi scripsit: quam accepi epistulam, lege.
Gaium nihil novi scripsisse; quam accepisset
epistulam, legerem.

- [163.] 1. I cannot set you free. Who are you? Whence
do you come?
He said he could not set me free: who was I,
whence did I come?
2. Are you looking for the book which you lost?
I asked him whether he was looking for the
book which he had lost.
3. Do you wish to read the letter which I have
written?

- Did I wish to read the letter which he had written?
4. Don't you all wish to be free? Take up arms. Did they not all wish to be free? Let them take up arms.
5. If you wish to wage war, do not despise the enemy.
If he wished to wage war, let him not despise the enemy.
6. Art is long; life is short: do not waste time. Art was long, *he said*, life was short: let him not waste time.
7. Do you wish to be an honour to your country? Are you worthy of the city which you received from your ancestors?
Did they wish to be an honour to their country? Were they worthy of the city which they had received from their ancestors?
8. Why do you delay? Do you expect any one? Start at once.
Why did he delay? Did he expect any one? Let him start at once.

XVI.

*A True Dream.**Direct.*

Cum duo quidam familiares, *inquit Cicero*, iter una facerent et Megara venissent, **alter** ad cauponem devertit, ad hospitem **alter**. Nocte media visus est ei, qui **erat** in hospitio,

Indirect.

Cicero in libro quodam narravit cum duo quidam familiares iter una facerent et Megara venissent, **alterum** ad cauponem devertisse, ad **hospitem alterum**. Nocte media visum esse ei, qui

ille alter orare, ut sibi subveniret, quod sibi interitus pararetur. Primo perterritus surrexit, dein, cum se collegisset, recubuit. Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare: "Quoniam
 15 mihi vivo non subvenisti, mortem meam inultam ne sis passus; interfectus a caupone in plastrum sum coniectus et supra stercus
 20 est iniectum; quid potest esse foedius? peto, ut mane ad portam adsis, priusquam plastrum ex urbe exeat; an vis me
 25 inultum trucidari?" Hoc somnio permotus mane ad portam venit et quaesivit ex bubulco, quid esset in plaistro. Ille perterritus
 30 fugit, mortuus erutus est; caupo re patefacta poenas dedit.

esset in hospitio, illum alterum orare, ut sibi subveniret, quod sibi interitus pararetur. Eum primo perterritum surrexisse, dein, cum se collegisset, recubuisse. Tum ei dormienti eundem illum visum esse rogare, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam pateretur; se interfectum a caupone in plastrum esse coniectum et supra stercus iniectum; quid posse esse foedius? petere se, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plastrum ex urbe exiret; an vellet se inultum trucidari? Hoc somnio permotum eum mane ad portam venisse et quaesivisse ex bubulco, quid esset in plaistro. Illum perterritum fugisse, mortuum esse erutum, cauponem re patefacta poenas dedisse.

(This exercise is to be translated first as it stands in Oratio Recta; it is then to be turned into Oratio Obliqua.)

[164.] You, O soldiers, whom I have so often led to victory, I will not now lead to death. While you can, depart from me: fly to the shore where there are ships, and return to the city which you have made famous.

I, for my part,¹ will stay here : I am an old man, nor do I wish to live longer. When you return home, tell² the citizens that in accordance with the custom of our ancestors the defeated general has not dared to enter the city. Farewell : if you remain here, there is no hope of safety. It was not wise to march into the territory of the enemy with two hundred men : I hope that you will return with three legions and fifty ships of war to conquer the enemy both by land and sea. Why do you delay ? If the horsemen see you, they will burn the ships.

¹ " I for my part," *Equidem*. In the Oratio Obliqua write, *Sequidem*.

² For " I tell," use *renuntio* (1).



NOTES ON THE PIECES FOR TRANSLATION

I.—THE PHILOSOPHER, p. 5.

2. *Viso puero quodam*: ablative; lit. "a certain boy having been seen," but we should say "when he (that is, the philosopher) saw." The construction (the ablative absolute) is explained in Section 10.

3. *dum . . . ambulat*: we should say, "while he (the philosopher) was walking."

4. *quod tibi nomen est*, as often, is left to be understood; lit. "what is the name to you?"

THE BARBER.

1. *quaesiveratque*: the *que* which is attached to *quaesiverat* means "and."

2. "Whether he wanted any of the things which were." The reason why the two verbs are in the subjunctive is given in Section 20.

3. *unguentorum, etc.*: the accusative and infinitive (*copiam esse*)—see Section 16—depends on "he said," to be supplied. So "he said that there was (*esse*) a very large supply."

atque optimorum quidem: "and very good ones too."

4. *Negavit, etc.*: not "he *denied* that," but "he *said* that he did not want anything."

6. *Da*: imperative of *dare*. After *soles* (from *soleo*) supply *dare*.

7. *totonderit*: lit. "who shall have," but we say "who has."

AN INGENIOUS LUNATIC, p. 6.

1. *insanos suos*: "his lunatics," *i.e.* the lunatics who were his patients at the asylum.

Cum . . . rogasset: the rule for the subjunctive is given in Section 35; "when he had asked."

3. *ille alter* : "the other," *i.e.* the lunatic.
5. *quis sim* : the subjunctive as *desideraret* above ; see Section 20.
- Nesciebam* : this is of course said by the doctor.
7. *hoc* : "at this," *i.e.* the following question, *nonne . . . esse*.

II.—AN ADVENTURE, p. 9.

1. *pueri pessimi et audaces* : "very naughty and daring boys as they were."
3. *autem* might be translated "however," but is best left out.
5. *gemitus* is acc. plur.
6. *multum* : adv.
9. *huc illuc* : without an *et* between them ; "this way and that," "anywhere."
13. *nobis* is dative, which is sometimes used with the gerundive to express the agent, "by us ;" see Section 24.
- faciendum est* : "is to be done" (see Section 24), "what are we to do ?"
14. *rei* : not from *res*, but from *reus*.
15. *Quid!* means "what else can we expect (than to be accused)?" Perhaps in English one would hardly say "what" here, but rather "for."
16. *quam celerrime* : "as quickly as we can."
17. *properandum est* : "we must hasten."
- si modo fieri potest* : perhaps the alarm would have been given, and they would not be allowed to leave.
- [19. *qui in illo cubiculo dormiebat* : the indicative does not break the rule given on p. 112, for the clause is not part of what the servant said ; he said perhaps "Mr. Smith."]
22. *precaturo* : "with the intention of begging for," etc., or simply "to ask for."

III.—GYGES' RING, p. 16.

1. *discessisset* : like *rogasset*, on p. 6.
2. *descendit* : perfect, and so is the following *animadvertit*.
- in illum hiatus* : "the chasm thus caused," *i.e.* by the deluge of rain.
4. *quibus apertis* : lit. "which doors having been opened by him," *i.e.* when he had opened the doors. The ablative absolute, Section 10.
5. *magnitudine* : ablative describing the kind of body, "a body of unusual size."
6. *detractum ipse induit* : lit. "he himself put on the ring having been drawn off the finger of the corpse," *i.e.* "he took the ring off and . . ."

erat autem: "he was, I should say."

7. *cum* . . . *converterat*: ind. not subjunctive after *cum*, as *discessisset* above, because *cum* here means "whenever."

9. *idem*: merely "and he."

in locum: "to its proper position."

11. *regem dominum*: "the king, his master."

13. *anuli beneficio*: lit. "by the kindness of the ring:" that is, "thanks to the ring."

rex exortus est: "he rose to be king."

IV.—PAEDAGOGUS—PUER, p. 21.

(From Erasmus' *Colloquies*.)

3. *sint*: "let them be;" the subjunctive may serve as an imperative.

4. *iuncti pedes*: i.e. *sint iuncti* and *sint quietae*.

5. *huius rei*: "of this conduct," "of this behaviour," "of these manners."

nobis: in Latin they often say "we" for "I."

6. *Quantum temporis*: *quantum* is accusative of duration of time, and so is *menses* below. For *quantum temporis* instead of *quantum tempus* see Section 31.

12. *Nunc flectendum est*: "Now you should give a bow (the boy does so)." "That's right!"

13. *autem*: "again." No single word will translate *autem* in all places. Suitable words in different places are "but," "however," "again," "now," and sometimes it is best left out altogether.

admoveo: "you shall," "you are too." The dish stands in the middle of the table, and people help themselves. *Admoveo* is the future imperative. *Admove* might take its place, but the other form is sometimes used when the command refers not to some particular occasion, but to any occasion which may in future arise. The future imperative is left out in the conjugation of the verbs on pp. 162-3. In the active the forms are:—

Sing. { 2. *Amāto Moneto Regito Audito*, "you shall love," etc.
3. *amato moneto regito audito*, "he shall love," etc.

Plur. 3. *amanto monento regunto audiunto*, "they shall love," etc.

14. *Si quid*: *quid* means "anything;" see *quis* in the dictionary at the end.

lautius: the comparative means "something more . . . than usual:" *prolixius* is used in the same way below.

16. *sitis*: this is not from *sum*, but from *sitio*.

17. *loquentibus*: "those who speak to you."

18. *nisi rogatus*: "except when asked to speak."
 20. *Vide ut*: "See that you remember," "Take care that," etc.
 22. *Num quid aliud vis?* "You do not want anything more from me?" *i.e.* "May I go now?"
 24. *Fiet*: lit. "it shall be done," *i.e.* "I will go to my books."

V.—STRANGE DISCOVERY, p. 25.

1. *Strato*: a doctor called Strāto. Though a doctor he was a slave, as was often the case in Roman times.

3. *dormientes*: "while . . ."

5. *uno . . . conscio*: all absolute; *puero* is in apposition to *uno ex servis*.

7. *eos servos qui*: the two who had been murdered.

9. *homines*: "people," everybody in the house, or everybody who had heard of the theft.

quonam modo fieri potuisset: *quonam*, "in what possible way."

The subjunctive because of the indirect question; *potuit fieri* (not *potest factum esse*) is the Latin for "it can have happened," see note to p. 85.

10. *domini*: "the master of the house."

12. *qua . . . videretur*: for the subjunctive see Section 53. It is due to *oratio obliqua*, in which all relative clauses have their verb in the subj.

13. *Ne multa*: the *dicam* is left out in this phrase; lit. "Let me not say much," *i.e.* "Not to make a long story of it," "In a word," etc.

perquiritur: an impersonal; "it is carefully inquired of the . . ." *i.e.* "careful inquiries are made."

15. *His rebus*: do not translate *res* always by "thing," but consider what word is suitable in each passage, here "facts."

19. *nequaquam omnes*: "but . . . ;" probably he had spent some of the money.

VI.—THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS, p. 31.

1. *annalibus*: chronicles or annals, so called because the events were recorded year by year (*annus*).

2. *Anus*: she was a Sibyl or prophetess, hence Sibylline Books. They were full of prophecies, and were after their purchase kept in the Capitol at Rome and consulted, as the Latin says, on critical occasions.

6. *nimum atque immensum*: supply *pretium*; "an extravagant and indeed an enormous price."

7. *aetate*: "by reason of her age," "because she was so old."

12. *id ipsum*: "the same demand," which was *ut . . . erat*.

14. *ore serio*: ablative of description; lit. "becomes of a serious face," i.e. "Tarquinius now looks serious and attentive."

15. *contemnendam*: singular, because *eam constantiam confidentiamque*—"such determined assurance"—is really one thing.

17. *Sed eam mulierem*: the order is, *Sed constitit eam mulierem, tunc a T. digressam, postea nunquam visam esse*. The meaning is that the woman then left T., and was never seen again.

19. *in sacrarium conditi*: supply *sunt*. The accusative with *in* is because it means "were taken to the temple and stored there."

21. *consulendi sunt*: for the gerundive see Section 24.

VII.—PROVERBIAL SAYINGS, p. 37.

2. Because from a horse's teeth you can tell its age.

3. We say, "There is no smoke without a fire."

5. "Like master, like man."

8. "Birds of a feather," etc.

9. *male parta*: "things ill got."

10. *premat*: subjunctive of indirect question, Section 20.

12. Like our "There is no rose without a thorn."

13. Like "the cobbler should stick to his last," and not attempt to judge of matters that are beyond his experience.

16. Our "still waters run deep." *Quisque* with the superlative, e.g. *optimus quisque*, means "all the best people;" lit. "each very good man."

18. However fertile a soil may be, there are some things that will not grow well in it.

22. What we learn on one day we profit by on the next; we live and learn.

25. *velis*: subjunctive of the indirect question, Section 20.

27. The subject of *moritur* is "he."

28. *speres*: "you would wish."

VIII.—SOME MARVELLOUS STORIES, p. 41.

1. *redibamus*: we were on our return, when the following thing happened (our coming upon some second-hand books)

Brundisii: "at Brundisium," Section 38.

3. *Atque ego*: "and I for my part."

4. *Erant autem*: "were Greek and full;" *autem* is best left out here in translation.

6. *volumina*: "as for the rolls themselves, however, they . . ." Ancient books were not bound in pages, but were in rolls.

7. *habitu aspectuque*: ablative of description, "were of a . . .," "were disgusting to handle and look at."

10. *transeo . . . carpsi*: Latin writers pass suddenly from the

historical present to the perfect, or *vice versâ*. We should rather say, "I turned over and extracted."

The order is *carpsi et notavi mirabilia quaedam*.

12. *qua fuisse facie*: *facie* ablative of description; lit. "of which appearance the poets say that the Cyclopes were;" *i.e.* "like the Cyclopes to look at, of which the poets tell."

17. *interimunt videndo quos*: "kill by merely looking at them those whom they have looked at in anger."

18. *diutius*: a comparative like *lautius* and *prolixius* in IV.; "for rather a long time."

25. *pedes duo*: accusative (of measure).

IX.—SERTORIUS, p. 47.

1. "Sertorius was an energetic man, etc."

3. *ad milites*: "before the soldiers," in addressing them publicly.

5. *istae res*: "such proceedings."

apud militum animos: "in the soldiers' minds," or simply "with the soldiers."

Illud adeo Sertorii nobile est: "this in particular (*adeo* adv.) is a famous story about Sertorius."

6. *simul*: "both"; so in English we can say "at once very beautiful and very fleet."

9. *quae utilia . . . essent*: subjunctive because *quae* is interrogative and indirect.

10. *durius*: "harder than usual," like *lautius* and *prolixius* in IV. and *diutius* in VIII.

11. *monitum*: supply *esse*.

12. *tamquam si deo*: "they obeyed him as if he were a god."

14. *consternatâ*: nom. sing., agreeing with *cerva*.

17. *nuntiatur*: "it is told;" the subject to the verb is *inventam esse cervam*.

18. *iussit*: the object is *eum* (*qui nuntiaverat*), to be supplied; compare VIII. line 18.

22. *quod opus est facto*: *facto* is the abl. of the perf. pass. part.; the phrase means "what is necessary to be done." [*Quod* is here not interrogative, and so the indicative is used; "tell me the thing which," not "tell me what."]

significat: *i.e.* to do what he had been told.

23. *missa*: "having been let go."

X.—FABLES ABOUT INDIA, p. 55.

1. Supply *sunt* to *diversi*.

2. *priusquam . . . conficiantur*: [*priusquam* is not always

accompanied by the subjunctive. The subj. here implies purpose ; "they kill them with the object of saving them from the decay of old age."]

6. *totum diem* : accus. of duration of time, as *sex menses* in IV.

10. *Romae* : "relates that at Rome."

11. *tardius* : like the comparatives in preceding pieces ; "more slowly than he ought."

12. *quae tradebantur* : "the things which were being delivered to him," i.e. "the lessons he was being given."

eundem : it does not make English to say "and that the same elephant ;" say only "and that he."

eadem : "these lessons."

14. *Ducit agmen* : "leads the line (or column) ;" *cogit*, "closes the line," "brings up the rear."

16. *elephas* : two words are used for elephant—*elephas* and *elephantus* ; for the nom. sing. *elephas* is used, and the other for the rest.

17. *omni vi* : "with all their might."

20. *prætereuntes* : i.e. *elephantos*.

24. *utrique* : both the snakes and the elephants.

XI.—A MURDER, p. 61.

1. (*Quidam*) a certain man (*consecutus est*) overtook (*in itinere*) on the road (*quendam*) another man (*proficiscentem*) as he (i.e. the other man) was going, etc.

2. *secum* : obviously refers to the *quendam*, not the *quidam* ; but see the remarks after Exercise 79.

3. *Cum hoc* : "with him."

ut fere fit : "as usually happens," "as was natural"—so *ut fit* below.

4. *ex quo factum est* : "in consequence of which it came about that," or shortly, "the result was that."

familiaris : adv. "in a friendly way," "as friends." The comparative here means little more than the positive, "in quite a friendly way." The use has occurred several times already ; in IV. *diutius* and *proximus*, in VIII. *diutius*, in IX. *durius* : *arctius* is the same below.

5. *vellent* : "they determined."

Qua re : lit. "on which account," "so."

7. *neque tamen* : "but both . . . did not . . ."

8. *Quomodo perisset* : indirect question.

16. *comitem illum suum* : we should not say "that companion of his," but only "his companion."

17. *Illum somno, etc.* : "he thought that his friend did not answer, being sound asleep ;" but the participle *impeditum* is the important

word, and we should rather say, "he thought his friend did not answer because he was sound asleep."

XII.—ALEXANDER'S SPEECH, p. 73.

1. *Hypāsis*: a tributary of the Indus.
4. *veritus ut*: "fearing that they would not," Section 51.
6. *possent*: "which might (possibly) have the power to."
7. *per hos dies*: "during these last days."
8. *vero*: *verum* is made into a noun, "the truth."
9. *mei*: gen. sing. of *ego*.
11. *adhibete*: "give me hearts full," etc.
13. *Oceanum*: the "Ocean" was supposed to be a stream flowing round and round the earth.
15. *eadem*: "both rich and unwarlike."
17. *Per vos*: "by yourselves and your glory." So *per deos*, "by the gods."
19. *ne dicam*: lit. "that I may not say," i.e. "not to say," "I will not say."
21. *ille clamor*: "the well-known shout," "the shout I know so well"—the shouts with which they usually declared they were willing to do whatever he wished.
23. *iamdudum pulso*: "I have long been," etc.
25. *tacere perseverarent*: "persisted in silence."
26. *Nescio quid* = "something;" it is acc. after *deliqui*, "I have committed some offence," "I have offended you in something."
- imprudens*: the adjective where we use the adverb. So *invitus feci*, "I did it unwillingly."
27. *quod*: "because," "in that," "seeing that," "for."
29. *Scythae Bactrianique*: the peoples of Scythia and Bactria.
31. *mīlites*: "fellow-soldiers."
- praestat*: "it is better."
- imperatorem*: agreeing with me understood.
32. *redūces*, from *reducere*, nom. plur. *ite reduces*, "go back."
34. *ulli*: dat. after *exprimi*, "from any."

XIII.—ARION, p. 81.

1. *cantator fidibus*: one who plays on and sings to the harp, "a minstrel." It is not common, however, for one noun depending on another to be in any other case than the genitive.
4. *eo*: adv. thither, "to those countries."
6. *ut notiores*: "as being . . ."
12. *ut . . . temperarent*: the clause explains the preceding *hoc*, "to refrain from killing him."

17. *consolaretur* : "which might console him in his sad plight."
27. *talem . . . qualis* : "in the same costume in which."
29. *rem sicuti acciderat narravit* : "related the adventure exactly as it had actually happened."
30. *quasi falleret* : "as if (or thinking that) he were trying to deceive him."
32. *venissent* : as *audivissent* the mood is due to indirect question.

XIV.—ASKING FOR A HOLIDAY, p. 94.

Scene I.

1. *Iamdudum . . . invitat* : in English we use a past tense, "has long been inviting;" so *iamdudum pulso* in XII.
3. *Invitat quidem haec omnia* : that is, of course, *ad ludendum*.
5. *qui . . . extorqueat* : *qui* with the subjunctive means the same as *ut* with the subjunctive; "to wrench," Section 46.
7. *dictum, i.e. dictum est* : lit. "aptly has the word 'wrench' been said by you," "you may well say *wrench*."
8. *clavam extorseris* : lit. "you (*i.e.* anybody) will more quickly have wrenched." Hercules carried about with him a huge knotty club, with which he attacked the Nemean lion and struck off the heads of the Lernaean watersnake.
9. *ludendi veniam* : "leave to play."
12. *ad verbera* : "for blows (caning)."
13. *hic* : in this point of granting half-holidays.
idemque : "and also."
14. *vult* : notice what different English is wanted for this verb in different places—"wish," "be willing," "mean," "determine," "like."
15. *carere* : to do without the half-holiday.
17. *Cocles* : the bold boy is called after Horatius Cocles, who kept the bridge so well.
18. *profecto* : adverb.
19. *initurus* : lit. "go, about to win," *i.e.* "go and win."
22. *si te satis novimus* : that is, "if we are not mistaken in you," "if you are the fellow we take you to be."

Scene II.

24. *Quid sibi vult* : lit. "What does he want for himself?" *i.e.* "what does he mean?" "what is he after?"
27. *Insidiosa civitas* : "What wily civility!" or "This civility is suspicious."
28. *Satis iam salveo* : "That's enough salutation!"
velis : indirect question.
31. *Nihil aliud quam luditis* : "You do nothing but play."

32. *Scit tua prudentia*: "Your wisdom knows," *i.e.* "You, in your wisdom, know."

35. *Sane ut, etc.*: "It is strange how you remember what makes for you (what suits your purpose)!"

Laxamento opus est iis: "There is need of relaxation to those," *i.e.* "They only need relaxation who."

40. *pro viribus*: "in proportion to our strength."

42. *Scio, etc.*: "I know how unsafe it is to:" *sit*: subj. in indirect question; so *sis* below.

44. *dederis verba*: *dare verba*, "to give words instead of things" means "to cheat," "deceive."

Scene III.

47. *O lepidum caput*: an endearing expression, "You splendid fellow," or something of the kind.

XV.—ANDROCLUS, p. 99.

A.

1. *Huius rei*: "of the following scene (or occurrence)."

2. *Circo Maximo*: the name of the great Circus or Amphitheatre at Rome, which could seat a hundred thousand people.

4. *admirationi fuit*: the dative is explained in Section 36.

8. *eui nomen Androclo*: in this construction the name (here Androclus) is made to agree with the person (*eui*), instead of being put (as one would expect) in apposition with *nomen*.

10. *admirans*: "in astonishment."

15. *amissum animum recuperat*: "recovers his presence of mind," "his self-possession."

B.

21. *uni*: "him alone."

22. *provinciam . . . obtineret*: "held the province," *i.e.* was acting as governor of one of the Roman provinces, in this case Northern Africa.

25. *a domino tutiores*: "safer from."

32. *territus mihi animus est*: *animus* is often put in in Latin, where we should say merely "I," "I was frightened."

postquam videt: *videt*, historical present.

33. *sublatum pedem ostendit*: no participle in English, "raised his foot and . . ."

40. *quas venabatur feras*: for *membra earum ferarum quas*.

C.

44. *reliqui*: from *relinquo*.

47. *dandum curavit*: "had me," "took care that I was."

XVI.—A TRUE DREAM, p. 119.

1. *quidam*: is of course nom. plur.

9. *quod pararetur*: the subjunctive means that this was the reason given by the spirit of the man who was about to be murdered. He said *Oro te ut mihi subvenias quod mihi interitus paratur*. The indicative, on the other hand, in such a sentence as *Oravit me ut sibi subvenirem quod timuit*, would mean that the real reason, though he did not confess it but gave some other reason, was that he was afraid.

17. *interfectus . . . sum coniectus*: here again as in *Androclus (sublatum pedem ostendit)* a participle and a verb are used where we should use two verbs coupled by "and"—"I have been murdered and . . ."

20. *quid potest esse foedius*: becomes when made indirect *quid posse* (not *posset*), as explained in footnote p. 117—no answer is expected to the question. It is only another way of saying *Nihil potest esse foedius*, which if reported becomes *Nihil posse esse foedius*.

LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE

EXERCISES AND TRANSLATION

*Obs. 1. Words that occur in the Exercises are printed in **thicker type**. (Many of these occur also in the Translation.)*

Obs. 2. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs. The gender of nouns which follow the rules is not given. Proper names are generally omitted if the English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

A, ab, *by* or *from* (with abl.); it is not used for *by* before things.
ābeo, *abivi* and *abii*, *abitum*, *abire*, *to go away, depart*. See eo, pp. 173-5.
abiit, *from abeo*.
ablēgo (1), *to remove*.
absens (*absentis*), *adj., absent*.
absque, *prepos. with abl., without*.
abstūlit, *perf. of aufero, I take away*.
absum, *I am absent, am away from*.
ac, *and*.
accēdo, *accessi* (3), *to approach*.
accersitus, *pteplo., from accerso, I summon*.
accessit, *from accedo*.
accīdit (3), *it happens; it may also be perfect, accīdit, it happened: (sometimes not impersonal)*.
accīpio, *accēpi*, *acceptus*, *ac-*

cipere, to receive, get; take in, accept.
accōmmōdatus, *adj., suited*.
accūso (1), *to accuse*.
ācer, *acris*, *acre*, *adj., keen, energetic*.
ācidus, *-a, -um, adj., sour*.
ācies (5), *line of battle*.
acriter, *adv., keenly, energetically*.
ad, *prep. with acc., to (of motion to), with a view to; ad bellum gerendum, with a view to waging war; ad tempus, up to time, in time; ad diem, on the right day; ad urbem proficiscitur, he sets out for the city; ad hunc modum, after this manner, to this effect, thus*.
addo (3), *to add*.
addūco, *adduxi*, *adductus* (3), *to lead to. Adductus, influenced by, i.e. in consequence of, attracted by*.

adeo, adv., *in particular*: or
ad + eo, *I go to*: see adire.

adesse, see adsum.

adeuntem, from adire.

adflūo (3), *to flow towards*.

adhībeo (2), *to give, supply*.

adhuc, adv., *at present, up to this time*.

adire (ad and eo), *to go to, approach*: pp. 173-5.

adiungo (3), *to join on, attach to*;
se adiungere, *to come quite close to*.

adiuturum, from adiuvo.

adiūvo, -iūvi, -iūtus (1), *to help*.

adlōquor (3), *to address, to address a remark to*.

admirabilis, -e, adj., *astonishing*.

admiratio (-ōnis), *admiration, astonishment*; admirationi esse, *to cause astonishment*.

admīror (1), dep., *to admire, to wonder*.

admōveo (2), -mōvi, -mōtus, *to move*.

adnītor (3), dep., *to strive, work*.

adno (1), *to swim up*.

adōrior, adortus (4), dep., *to attack*.

adprehendo, adprehendi, adprehensus (3), *to arrest*.

adsum, *to be present, or near at hand*; adsum tibi, *I help you* (I am present for you).

ādūlescens (adulescentis), *young, a young man*.

adūlor (1), dep., *fawn*.

advēnio (4), *approach*; see venio.

adventus (4), *arrival, approach, coming*.

aedes (aedium), plur., *a house*.

aedifico (1), *to build*.

aegre, adv., *with difficulty*.

Aenēas (a Trojan), abl. Aenea.

aēnēus, adj., *made of brass, brazen*.

aequor, neut., *sea*.

aes (aeris), neut., *brass, money*.

aestas (aestātis), *summer*.

aetas (aetātis), *age*.

āge, imper. of ago, *come!*

āger (agri), *a field, land, territory*.

agger (aggēris), *a mound*.

agmen (agminis), *column (of an army)*.

agnosco (3), *to recognise*.

āgo, ēgi, actus (3), *to do, to be active or busy, to drive*; vitam agere, *to spend or lead one's life*; agere cum aliquo, *to treat with somebody*.

alacritas (alacritātis), *ardour, eagerness, alacrity*.

albus, adj., *white*.

āliquantus, adj., *some, considerable*; aliquantum pecuniae, *a considerable sum of money*.

āliquis, aliquid, or aliqui, aliquod, *some*; aliquis, somebody; aliquid, something; aliquid cibi (something in the way of food), *some food*.

ālius, adj. (gen. alius), *other, another, different*. Alii . . . alii, *some . . . others*.

alter (gen. alterius), *a second, the other*; alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*; ille alter, *the other*.

alternus, adj., *alternate*; alternis pedibus, *first on one foot, then on the other*.

altus, adj., *deep*; altissima quaeque flumina, *all the deepest rivers*; very deep rivers; altum, subst., *the deep (sea)*.

alumnus (2), *pupil*.

ambūlo (1), *to walk*.

āmicitia (1), *friendship*.

āmicus (2), *a friend*; or adj., *friendly*.

āmitto, amīsi, amissus (3), *to lose*.

- amnis (amnis), masc., *stream, river.*
amo (1), *to love, like.*
amor (amōris), *love*; *amori est mihi, it is dear to me*; *amore pecuniae feci, I did it through love of money.*
amphōra (1), *a bottle.*
an, or (in a question): in XVI. like *num, do you then?*
animadverto, -verti (3), *to notice, observe.*
animal (animālis), *an animal.*
animus (2), *mind, heart, feelings.*
annāles, plur., *annals, chronicles, records.*
annus (2), *year.*
ante, prep. with accus., *before*; adv., *before.*
antea, adv., *before.*
antiquus, adj., *old, ancient.*
anulus (2), *a ring.*
ānus (4), *an old woman.*
āpērio, aperui, apertus (4), *to open*; *uncover (the head).*
aperte, adv., *openly.*
appello (1), *to call.*
appēto (3), *to try for, strive after.*
appōno (3), *to place by or near.*
appositus (part. of appono), *placed near, laid near.*
apte, adv., *fitly, rightly.*
āpud, prep. with acc., *with, among.*
arbitror (1), dep., *to think.*
arbor (arbōris), fem., *tree.*
arctius, adv., *more closely*; *arctius dormit, he is sound asleep.*
arēna (1), *sand.*
argentum, *silver, money.*
arma (2), plur., *arms, weapons.*
armarium, *chest, safe (for valuables).*
arrideo (2), *to smile upon, look pleasant.*
ars (artis), *art.*
as (assis), *an as, a small Roman coin*; *asse carum est, is dear at a farthing.*
aspectus (4), *aspect, appearance.*
at, *but.*
atque, *and.*
atrox (atrōcis), adj., *fierce.*
attāmen, *but, all the same.*
attentus, adj., *attentive.*
attingo (3), *to reach.*
attūli, perf. of alfero (ad, fero), *I bring.*
auctio (auctionis), *an auction, sale.*
audax (audācis), adj., *bold, impudent.*
audeo (2), *the perfect is deponent, ausus sum, to dare.*
audio (4), *to hear, listen to.*
aufugio, aufūgi, aufugēre, *to run away.*
aurēus, adj. (of aurum), *golden, gold.*
auris (auris), fem., *an ear.*
aurum (2), *gold.*
ausus, from audeo.
aut, or; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*
autem, adv., *but, however, now.*
auxilium, *help*; *auxilio mittere, to send for a help, i.e. as a help*; *auxilio tibi venio, I am coming to your aid.*
aversus, part. of averto, *turned away, unfriendly, unsympathetic.*
avide, adv., *eagerly.*
āvidus, adj., *eagerly desirous, greedy (for).*
āvis (avis), fem., *a bird.*
Barba (1), *a beard.*
barbāri (2), *the barbarians, foreigners.*
Belgae, *the Belgae (a people of Gaul).*
bellum, *war.*

bēnē, adv., *well*; bene agere, *to get on well*.

beneficium, *a benefit, a kindness*.

bestia (1), *a wild beast*.

binus, adj., *two each*.

blande, adv., *gently, in a caressing way*.

blandimentum, *caress*.

bōnus, adj., *good*.

brēvis, adj., *short*.

Brundisium, *a town (now Brindisi)*.

bubulcus (2), *a ploughman, farm-labourer*.

Cādo (3), *to fall*.

caecus, adj., *blind*.

caedes (caedis), *murder*.

caedo (3), *to kill*.

caelum, *the sky*.

Caesar (Caesāris), *Caesar* (a great Roman general and writer).

campus (2), *a plain*.

cānesco (3), *to grow gray, get gray-headed*.

caninus, adj., *like a dog*.

cānis (canis), *a dog*.

cāno (3), *to sing*.

cantātor, *player, minstrel*.

cantus (4), *singing, song*.

cāpio, cēpi, captus, capēre, *to take, take possession of, seize, catch*; consilium capere, *to form a plan*; somnum capere, *to sleep, to pass the night*.

capitalis, -e, adj., res capitalis, *a capital charge*.

captivus (2), *a prisoner, captive*.

Cāpua, *Capua* (a city in Campania, in Italy).

cāput (capitis), *a head*; accuso hominem capitis, *I bring a capital charge against a man*.

cāreo, *to go without something*.

carmen (carminis), *song, poem*.

carpo, carpsi, carptus (3), *to pick, pick out*.

Carthaginiensis, *a Carthaginian*.

Carthāgo (Carthaginis), *Carthage*.

carus, adj., *dear*.

castigo (1), *to chastise, punish*.

castra (neut. plur.), *a camp*.

casus (4), *chance, fate*.

Cātīlīna (1), *Catiline* (a conspirator who was checked by Cicero).

cauda (1), *tail*.

caupo (caupōnis), *an innkeeper*.

causa (1), *a cause, reason*; causā, abl., *for the sake of, because of*; qua de causa, *for which reason, wherefore*.

cēler, celēris, celere, adj., *swift*.

cēlērīter, adv., *quickly*.

celerius, *more quickly*.

celerrime, adv. (superl. of celer), *very quickly*; quam celerrime (potui), *as quickly as I could*.

cenātus, partic. (with deponent sense), *having dined or supped, after dinner*.

cēno (1), *to dine*.

cepi, from capio.

cerno (3), *to see, discern*.

certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure*; Caesarem certiorum facio, *I inform Caesar*; puella certior facta est, *the girl has been informed*.

cerva (1), *a hind*.

cervix (cervicis), *neck* (often in plural only).

cessatus, from cesso, *I am idle*.

In XIV. si quid cessatum est, *if there has been any idling*.

cētēri, *the rest, the others*; cetera, *all other things*.

cībus (2), *food*.

Cīcēro (Cicerōnis), *Cicero* (a great Roman writer and statesman).

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.

circumsēco (1), *to cut round, to cut a round hole*.

circumsto, circumstēti (1), inf.

- circumstare, *to stand round, surround.*
 circens (2), *circus.*
 citius, *more quickly.*
 civilitas (-tātis), *civility.*
 cīvis (civis), *a citizen, a fellow-citizen.*
 cīvitas (civitatis), *a state.*
 clāmo (1), *to call out, shout.*
 clāmor (clamōris), *shout, shouting.*
 clarus, adj., *bright.*
 classis (classis), *a fleet.*
 claudus, adj., *lame.*
 clāva (1), *a club.*
 clementia, *kindness, clemency.*
 coactor (coactōris), *collector of money, auctioneer's clerk.*
 coactus, *see cogo.*
 coepi, *I have made a beginning, I began.*
 cognītus, *from cognosco.*
 cognosco, cognōvi, cognītus (3), *to learn, hear, discover.*
 cognōvi, *from cognosco.*
 cōgo, cōēgi, coactus (3), *to drive, compel, force.*
 colligo, collēgi, collectus (3), *to collect; me colligo, I collect my thoughts, recover from panic.*
 collis (collis), *masc., hill.*
 collōco (1), *to post, place, station.*
 collōquium, *a conference.*
 collōquor (3), *dep., to talk with.*
 cōlor (colōris), *colour.*
 cōmae, *the hair; the mane.*
 cōmes (comītis), *companion.*
 comitem, *from comes.*
 commendatio(-onis), *recommendation.*
 commilitō (commilitōnis), *fellow-soldier.*
 committo, commisi, commissus (3), *to join together, combine; committere praelium, to join battle, give battle.*
 commōrior (3), *dep., to die together.*
 commōveo (2), commōvi, commōtus, *to move; suspicio commovetur in aliquem, suspicion is directed against some one.*
 compareo (2), *to appear.*
 complūres, *very many.*
 compositus, *partic. of compono, made up, false.*
 comprehendo (3), *I seize, arrest.*
 concēdo, concessi (3), *to grant; to retire, withdraw.*
 conclāmo (1), *to cry out, raise a cry.*
 condemno (1), *to condemn.*
 condo, condidi, conditus (3), *to put together, bury, found, compose, put away.*
 confectus, *part. of conficio.*
 confēro, contūli, conferre, *to carry together; sermonem cum aliquo conferre, to fall into conversation; nolite conferre culpam, do not throw the blame.*
 conficio, confēci, confectus, conficere, *to finish; in X. to be worn out, exhausted.*
 confidentia (1), *self-possession.*
 congēro (3), *to bring together, pile up.*
 congrēdior, inf. congrēdi, *to meet, to fight, engage.*
 congrēgor (1), *to herd or flock together, gather together, to collect.*
 conicio, conieci, coniectus, conicere (from iacio), *to throw, cast.*
 cōnor, conatus, *dep., to try, endeavour.*
 conscius, adj., *conscious, conspiring, being an accomplice or confidant.*
 consēquor, consecūtus (3), *dep., to follow close, overtake.*
 conservus (2), *a fellow-slave.*
 consilium, *strategy, plan; consilium capio, make a plan, plot.*
 consōlor (consolātus), *dep. (1), to console; to mitigate, soothe.*

conspēctus (4), *sight*.

constantia (1), *constancy, persistence*.

constat, constitit, *it is well known, believed by all*.

consterno (1), *to strike with terror*.

constituo, constitui, constitutus (3), *to determine, arrange, settle, appoint*.

construo (3), *to pile up, construct*.

consuesco, consuēvi (3), *to be accustomed*.

consul, consulis, *a consul (a Roman official); me consule, I being consul, in my consulship*.

consūlo (3), *to consult*.

contemno, contempsi, contemptus (3), *to despise*.

contemptus (4), *contempt*.

contra, prep. with accus., *against*.

contueor, dep. (2), *to look upon*.

contulit, from confero.

convālesco, convālui (3), *to grow strong, recover*.

converto, converti (3), *to turn*.

convictus, from convinco (3), *to conquer thoroughly, to convince, to convict*.

convīva (1), *a guest*.

convivium, *dinner, dinner-party*.

cōpia (1), *supply*; **copiae**, *forces (of an army)*.

coram, adv., *in the presence of, in his presence*.

Corinthius, adj., *Corinthian*.

Corinthus (2), fem., *Corinth (a city in Greece)*.

corōna (1), *a crown, wreath*.

corpus (corpōris), *body*.

corrūo (3), *fall to the ground*.

cotīdiānus, adj., *daily*.

cras, adv., *to-morrow*.

crēdo, credidi, creditum (3), *to believe, trust, think; credo tibi, I believe you*.

creo (1), *to create, appoint*.

crepīda (1), *a sole, sandal*.

crudēlitas (-tatis), *cruelty*.

cruentus, adj., *blood-stained*.

crur (crurōris), *blood, thick blood*.

crus (crūris), n., *leg*.

cubiculum, *a room*.

cuius, gen. of qui or quis.

cuiusdam, from quidam.

culpa (1), *blame*; culpam confero, *I throw the blame*.

culpo (1), *to blame, find fault with*.

cum, conjunction, *when, as* (often with subjunctive mood); **cum**, preposition with abl., *with, along with, in company with*.

cupīdus, adj., *desirous, covetous*.

cupio, cupii, cupēre, *to desire, wish*.

cur, *why?*

cura (1), *care*; curae est mihi, *it is a care or anxiety to me*.

curo (1), *to attend to, to have something done*; curat pontem faciendum in flumine, *he has a bridge made over a river*.

cursus, adv., *hastily*.

cursus (4), *course*; cursum tenere, *to hold on your course*.

custōdio (4), *to keep in custody*.

cyāthus (2), *cup*.

Cyclōpes (acc. Cyclopas), *the Cyclopes*.

Damno (1); *I condemn*.

dare, dat, from do.

de, prep. with abl., *of, concerning, about, from*.

dēbeo, *I owe, I ought*; debui ire, *I ought to have gone*.

debilis, -e, adj., *weak, disabled*.

deceo (2), *to befit, become*.

decīdo, decīdi (3), *to fall down*.

dēcīmus, adj., *the tenth*.

dēcīpio, decēpi, deceptus, decipēre, *to deceive*.

dēdi, perfect of do.

- dēdo**, dedīdi, dedītus (3), *to give up, surrender*; deditus, *surrendered, given up to, devoted to, absorbed in*.
- dēduco, deduxi, deductus (3), *to lead down, to bring*.
- defendo**, defendi, defensum (3), *to defend*.
- defixus, part. of defigo, *turned down, bent down*.
- defui, from desum, *to be wanting, fail*.
- deicio, deiēci, deiectus, deiecere, *to throw down*.
- dēin, dēinde, adv., *then, afterwards*.
- dēlecto** (1), *to amuse, delight*.
- dēligo, delēgi (3), *to choose, select*.
- deliqui, perf., from delinquo (3), *I offend, do wrong*.
- deliro (1), *to be stark-mad*.
- delitescō, delitui (3), *to lie hid*.
- delphinus (2), *a dolphin*.
- demissus, from demitto, *bent down*.
- demulceo, *to stroke*.
- dens (dentis), masc., *a tooth*.
- denuo, adv., *anew, again*.
- deprehendo,prehendi,prehensus (3), *to catch, detect*.
- derideo, derisi (2), *to laugh (derisively) at*.
- descendo, descendi, descensum (3), *to go down, descend*.
- desero, deserui, desertus (3), *to desert*.
- desidero (1), *to require, desire*.
- desilio (4), *to leap down*.
- desipio, desipere, *to be foolish, idiotic (from sapio, I am wise)*.
- destituo, destitui, destitutus (3), *to forsake, abandon*.
- detergeo, deteresi, deteresus (2), *to wipe away*.
- deterreo, *to deter, frighten away*.
- detrāho, detraxi, detractus (3), *to draw off*.
- denro (3), *to burn up*.
- deus** (2), nom. plur. di, *god*.
- devēho, devexi (3), *to carry down (to the coast from the high sea)*.
- deversor (deversōris), *a lodger, guest*.
- deversorium, *an inn*.
- deverto, deverti (3), *to turn aside from one's journey, to put up, lodge*.
- di, see deus.
- Diāna**, Diana (a goddess).
- dic**, imperative of dico.
- dico**, dixi, dictus (3), *to say, tell, to appoint*.
- didici**, from disco.
- dies** (5), masc. or fem. in the singular, masc. only in the plural, *a day*; ad diem, *on the proper day*.
- difficilis**, -e, adj., comp. difficilior, sup. difficillimus, *difficult*; in XIV. difficillimus means *very difficult to get at or persuade, churlish*.
- digitus (2), *finger*.
- dignus**, adj., *worthy*; dignus laude, abl., *worthy of praise*.
- digredior, digressus, digredi, dep., *to part, to go away*.
- dilābor (3), dep., *to fall to pieces, disappear*.
- diligentia** (1), *diligence, industry*.
- diligo (3), *to love*.
- dimicatio (-ōnis), fem., *struggle*.
- dimitto**, dimisi, dimissus (3), *to dismiss; to release*.
- discēdo**, discessi, discessum (3), *to go away, to part asunder*; a me discessit, *he left me*.
- discipulus (2), *a pupil*.
- disco**, didici (3), *to learn*.
- discubui, perf., from discumbo (3), *to go to bed*.
- dissēro, disserui, dissertus (3), *to speak, discourse*.

diu, adv., *for long, for a long time*; **diutius**, (any) longer.

diutinus, adj., *long*.

diversus, adj., *different*.

dives, **divitis**, adj., *rich*.

divinitus, adv., *divinely, by a god*.

divinus, adj., *divine*.

divitiae, *riches, wealth*.

do, **dēdi**, **dātus** (1), *to give, grant, yield*. The person to whom one gives something must always be put in the dative: *I give you money, do tibi pecuniam*. Verba dare, in Tr. XIV., see Notes.

dōceo, **docui**, **doctus**, *to teach*; **doctus**, -a, -um, *learned*.

docilitas (**docilitātis**), *teachableness*.

dōlor (**dolōris**), *pain, sorrow, grief*.

dōmi, *at home*.

domina (1), *a mistress*.

dōminus (2), *master, owner*; Domine, *Sir!*

domum, *home*; i.e. *to go home, domum ire*.

dōmus, fem. (2 and 4), *house, home*.

donātus, partic. of **dono**, *given*;

donatus equus, *a gift-horse*.

dono (1), *to give, present*.

dōnum, *gift, present*; **dono dare**, *to give as a gift*.

dormio, *to go to sleep, to sleep*; **dormitum eo** (*I am going away in order to sleep*), *I am going to bed*.

dorsum, *a back*.

draco (**dracōnis**), *a snake*.

dubīto (1), *to doubt*.

dubium, *doubt*; **procul dubio**, *far from doubt, undoubtedly, certainly*.

duces; either **dūces** from **dux**, or **dūces**, fut. of **duco**.

dūco, **duxī**, **ductus** (3); *to lead, bring*.

dulcis, **dulce**, adj., *sweet*.

dum; with Indicative *while*, with subjunctive *until*.

duo, **duae**, **duo**, *two*.

durus, adj., *hard*.

dux (**dūcis**), *leader*; **me dūce**, *I being leader, under my leadership*.

duxī, from **duco**.

E, also **ex**, prep. with abl., *from, out of, from among*.

ea, from **is**.

eadem, from **idem**.

ecquid, *whether? whether . . . anything*.

ēdo (**e** and **do**), **edīdi**, **edītus** (3), *to give out, to lift, to raise, to utter*; or, **ēdo**, **ēdi**, **esum** (3), *to eat*.

edūco, **eduxī** (3), *draw out*.

egi, from **ago**.

ēgo, *I*.

ēgrēdior, **egressus**, **egrēdi** (3), dep., *to step out, leave, disembark*.

egregius, adj., *excellent, distinguished*.

ei, **eius**, from **is**, **ea**, **id**.

eidem, **eiusdem**, from **idem**.

eiusmodi, *of this kind, of the following kind*.

elephantus (2), *an elephant*.

elephas (**elephantis**), *an elephant*.

elido (3), *to crush*.

ēmo, **ēmi**, **emptus** (3), *to buy*.

ēnim, adv., *for*.

eo, **ivi** and **ii**, **itum**, *ire, to go*, see p. 173; **eo**, abl. of **is**, or adv., *thither*.

eodem, from **idem**.

ēpistūla (1), *a letter*.

epūlor (1), dep., *to make a feast*.

ēques (**equītis**), *a horseman*; **equites**, *cavalry*.

equidem, *I for my part*.

ēquītātus (4), *cavalry*.

ēquus (2), *a horse*.

erūtus, from eruo, *was drawn out.*
esse, *to be.*

et, conj., *and*; et . . . et, *both*
. . . *and.*

etiam, *also, even.*

etiamsi, *even if.*

eundem, from eo.

euntem, acc. of iens, pres. part. of eo.

ex, prep., with abl., *from out of,*
out of, from, from among, in
consequence of.

exanimatus, *dead.*

excellō (3), *to excel, to be remark-*
able.

excito (1), *to arouse, excite, call*
forth.

exerceo (2), *to exercise*; corpus,
or se, exercere, *to exercise the*
body, to take exercise.

exercitus (4), *army.*

exinde, adv., *then, after that.*

exire (ex + eo, ire), *to go out from,*
leave.

existimo (1), *to think, fancy.*

exitus (4), *going out, end.*

exorior, exortus, dep., *to rise.*

exoro (1), *to prevail upon or per-*
suade some one by entreaty.

exp̄ior (4), dep., *to try.*

expono, exposui, expositus (3),
to expose, put out.

exprimo (3), *to squeeze out, wring*
out, extract.

exsēco, exsecui (1), *to cut out, to*
cut a hole in.

exsectio (-onis), *a cutting out, the*
cutting of a hole.

exsilio, exsilui (4), *I jump out.*

expecto (1), *to expect, await,*
wait for.

exsto, exstiti, exstare, *to stand*
forth, to come forward.

extorqueo, extorsi, extortus, *to*
wrench, extort.

extrāho (3), *pull out.*

exūro, exussi, exustus (3), *to burn*
up.

Faber (fabri), *a smith, a maker.*

fabūla (1), *a fable, story.*

facies (5), *face, appearance.*

fācilis, adj. (comp. faciliior, sup.
facillimus), *easy, ready.*

facilius, adv., *more easily.*

facillime, adv., *most (or very)*
easily (or readily).

facinus (facinōris), *deed, crime.*

fācio, fēci, factus, fācere, *to*
make, do: fio supplies part of
the passive, p. 173.

factu, supine of facio; utilia
factu, *things useful (advisable)*
to do, the right things to do.

factum, *an act, deed.*

fallo, fefelli, falsus (3), *to deceive*;
me mea opinio fallit, *my belief*
deceives me, i.e. I am wrong in
my belief (or idea); me fallit,
it escapes me, i.e. I do not notice.

falsus, part. of fallo; falsus sum,
I am mistaken.

fāma (1), *fame, report.*

familiaris, *a friend.*

familiaritas (-tatis), *familiarity.*

familiarius, adv., *in a friendly*
way.

fascis (fascis), *a bundle.*

fāteor, fassus, dep., *to confess.*

fāveo, fāvi, fautum, *to favour,*
with dat.

feci, from facio.

fefelli, perf. of fallo.

fenestra (1), *a window.*

fēra (1), *a wild animal, beast.*

fere, adv., *generally.*

ferinus, adj., *belonging to a wild*
beast; vita ferina, *a wild beast's*
life.

ferme, adv., *almost, about.*

fero, tili, lātus, ferre, *to bring,*
carry, bear, endure, relate, say;
see pp. 171-2.

ferōcia (1), *ferocity.*

ferre, infin. of fero.

ferveo (2), *to burn.*

fessus, adj., *tired*.
festinatio (-ōnis), *hurry*.
fides (5), *faith, honesty*; or **fīdes** (3), plur., *strings, harp*.
fidibus, from **fides** (3).
fiducia (1), *confidence*.
fieri, infin. of **fio**.
filia (1), *daughter*.
filius (2), *son*.
finio (4), *to finish*.
finis (finis), masc., *end*; **fines**, plur., *the boundaries (of a country), the country (itself), land, territory*.
fio, factus, *to be made, become, to happen*; **fiēri potest**, *it can happen, it is possible*; **ita fit**, *thus it comes about or happens*; **qui fit**, *how does it come about?* **ut fit**, *or ut fere fit*, *as usually happens, as is usual or natural*.
fit, from **fio**, p. 173.
flamma (1), *flame*.
flecto, flexi, flexus (3), *to bend*; **flectendum est genu**, *you ought to bend the knee, you ought to make a bow*.
flos (flōris), *flower*.
fluctuo (1), *to wave*.
fluctus (4), *a wave*.
fluō (1), *to float*.
flumen (flumīnis), *river*.
flūvius (2), *river*.
focūlus (2), *a brazier*.
foedus, -a, -um, *shocking, shameful*.
foras, adv., *out of doors*; **foras eo**, *I go out of doors*.
fōre, the fut. inf. of **sum**; **dicit fore ut occidar** (he says it will come about or happen that I get killed), *he says that I shall be killed*; **fōrem**, impf. subj. of **sum**.
fōres (forum), plur. fem., *doors*.
forma (1), *form, shape, make*; *beauty*.
formīdo (formidīnis), *fear*.

formōsus, adj., *beautiful, handsome*.
forte, adv., *by chance*.
fortis, forte, adj., *brave, strong*.
fortiter, adv. of **fortis**, *bravely*.
fortūna (1), *fortune*.
fovea (1), *pit*.
fractus, part. of **frango**.
frāgor (fragōris), *breakage, smashing*.
frango, frēgi, fractus (3), *to break (something)*.
frāter (fratris), *brother*.
fregisse, from **frango**.
frēmītus (4), *roar*.
frēnum, *curb, bit*.
frīgus (frigōris), *cold*.
frons (frontis), *forehead*.
frumentor (1), dep., *to fetch corn, to forage*.
frumentum, *corn*.
frustra, adv., *in vain, vainly*.
fūga (1), *flight*.
fūgio, fūgi, fugēre, *to fly, flee, run away, escape*.
fugitivus, adj., *run-away*.
ful, perf. of **sum**.
fumus (2), *smoke*.
fundus (2), *bottom*.
funis (funis), masc., *a rope*.
furtum, *theft*; **furtum facere**, *to commit a theft*.
Gaius (2), *Caius* (a common Roman name).
Gallia, *Gaul* (the country, now France).
Gallus (2), *a Gaul*.
gaudeo (2), (the perf., **gāvīsus sum**, is dep.), *to rejoice*; **hoc gaudeo**, *I rejoice at this*.
gemītus (4), *groan*.
gēna (1), *cheek*.
Genāva (1), *Geneva*.
gens (gentis), *race, nation*.
genu (4), *the knee*.
Germanus, *a German*.

gēro, gessi, gestus, *to do*; *bellum gerere*, *to carry on war*.

gessi, from *gero*.

gestus, past part. of *gero*.

gigno (3), *to produce*.

gladiātor (-ōris), *gladiator*.

glādius (2), *a sword*.

glōria (1), *glory*.

Graecia, *Greece*.

Graecus, adj., *Greek*.

grandis, grande, adj., *great*, *grand*, *grown up*.

grātia (1), *gratitude*; *gratiae*, *thanks*; *gratias agere*, *to return thanks*, *to thank*; *gratiam inire*, *to win gratitude*; *gratiā*, abl., *for the sake of*, *because of*.

grātūlor, *gratulatus*, dep., *to congratulate*, with dat.

grātus, adj., *acceptable*, *popular*.

grāviter, adv., *heavily*, *severely*; *graviter ferre*, *to be annoyed or distressed at or by*.

gregātim, adv. of *grex* (*a herd*), *in herds*.

gressus (4), *step*.

grex (*grēgis*), masc., *flock*, *troop*, *company*, *number*.

Habēna (1), *rein*.

hābeo (2), *to have*; *habeor*, *to be held*, *considered*; *bene habet* (*it has itself well*), *that's right*, *that will do*.

habitus (4), *habit*, *custom*, *condition*.

Haedui, the *Haedui*, a tribe in Gaul.

haereo (2), *haesi*, *haesum*, *to stick*.

Hannibal (*Hannibālīs*), *Hannibal*, a great Carthaginian general.

haud, adv., *not*.

handquaquam, adv., *by no means*, *not at all*.

haurio, *hausi*, *haustus* (4), *to draw in*, *inhale*.

Helvētīi, the *Helvetii*, a tribe of Gauls living near the Lake of Geneva.

Hercūles (*Herculis*), *Hercules*.

hēri, adv., *yesterday*.

heus, *halloa! ho!*

hiātus (4), *chasm*.

hic, **haec**, **hoc**, pron., *this*; or **hic** is adv. *here*.

hiēmo (1), *to pass the winter*, *to winter*.

hinc, adv., *from this place*, *hence*.

Hispānia (1), *Spain*.

hoc, from **hic**.

hōdie, adv., *to-day*.

hōmo (*hominis*), *a man*, *a person*.

hōnestus, adj., *honourable*, *honest*.

hōnor (*honōris*), *honour*, *respect*.

hōra (1), *hour*.

hortor (1), dep., *to encourage*, *urge (on)*.

hortus (2), *a garden*.

hospes (*hospitis*), *a host*, *friend*.

hospita (1), *a stranger*.

hospitium; *esse in hospitio*, *to be in a friend's house*, *to be entertained by a friend*.

hostia (1), *a sacrificial victim*.

hostis (*hostis*), *an enemy*; *hostes*, *the enemy* (*i.e.* a hostile army).

huc, adv., *hither*.

huius, **huic**, from **hic**.

humānus, adj., *human*.

humērus (2), *a shoulder*.

humi, adv., *on the ground*.

Iācio, **iēci**, **iactus**, **iacēre**, *to throw*.

iacto (1), *to throw*, *throw out*; *spread*, *say*; *multa iactata esse*, *that many reports have been spread*.

iam, *already*, *immediately*, *now*.

iamdiu, adv., *now a long while*, *long*; *iamdiu te audio*, *I have been listening to you a long while*.

iamdudum, *already for a long time, all this while.*

ibi, adv., *there.*

ibidem, adv., *in the same place or room; on the spot, then and there.*

ibo, from eo.

id, from is.

idem, eadem, *idem*, *the same.*

idōneus, adj., *suitable, fit, adapted.*

ieci, from iacio.

iens, from eo.

igitur, adv., *therefore.*

ignārus, adj., *ignorant.*

ignis (ignis, abl. igni), masc., *fire.*

ignōro (1), *I am ignorant; omnia ignorat, he is ignorant of everything.*

ii, plural of is, *they.*

ille, pron., *that.*

illic, adv., *there.*

illuc, adv., *thither.*

imbellis, adj., *unwarlike.*

imber (imbris), *a shower, rain.*

immānitas (-tatis), *hugeness, huge size.*

immensus, adj., *immense.*

immitto (3), *to let in.*

immōbilis, -e, adj., *immovable, fixed.*

immortālis, adj., *immortal.*

impēdimenta, *baggage.*

impēdio, *to impede, hinder, prevent; somno impeditus, burdened with sleep, because he was so sound asleep.*

imperātor (-ōris), *general.*

imperium, *command, empire, rule.*

impēro (1), *to command, order, rule, with dat.*

impetro (1), *obtain, to get what you want.*

impētus (4), *charge, attack.*

imprūdens, adj., *unknowing, unwitting.*

in, prep., with accus., *into, on to, against*, with abl., *in, on.*

incēdo (3), *to walk.*

incendo, incendi, incensus (3), *to set on fire, to burn.*

inclāmo (1), *to call out to.*

inclītus, adj., *famous.*

incognitus, adj., *unknown.*

incōla (1), *an inhabitant.*

incōlūmis, adj., *safe, unhurt.*

incursio (-onis), *onslaught.*

inde, adv., *thence, hence.*

index (indīcis), *sign.*

indīco (1), *to give information, tell.*

indūo, indui, indūtus (3), *to put on.*

industria (1), *industry; de industria, on purpose.*

īneo, *to enter (upon); consilium*

inire, to form a plan, adopt a

resolution, determine; gratiam

inire, to win (lit. enter on)

gratitude: see pp. 173-5.

infītiac, *denial; infītiās ire, to deny.*

infractus, from *infringo, exhausted, broken.*

ingēnium, *disposition, intellect.*

ingens (ingentis), *huge, immense.*

ingēnuus, adj., *well-bred, gentlemanly.*

ingrēdior, *to go, advance, enter.*

inibis, from *ineo.*

iniectus, from *inicio, thrown over or into (in and iacio).*

inimīcus, subst., *an enemy; adj., unfriendly.*

inīquus, adj., *unjust, cruel.*

inire, inisse, from *ineo.*

īnitium, *a beginning.*

initurus, from *ineo, about, or destined to win, or earn.*

inopinans (inopinantis), adj., *not expecting.*

inquit, *he said, said he.*

insānus (2), *a lunatic.*

- insidiōsus**, *insidious, deceitful, cunning*; in XIV. *insidiosa civilitas, this civility is a strategem.*
insimūlo (1), *to accuse.*
insisto, *institi* (3), *to stand upon.*
inspērātus, adj., *unhoped for*; *insperata, unexpected things, the unexpected.*
inspicio, *inspicere*, *to look into, examine.*
instinguo, *instinxi, instinetus* (3), *to inspire.*
instituto, *institutui* (3), *to resolve.*
insto (1), *to insist, to press*; si *instabitur, if it is insisted on, if you are pressed.*
instrūo, *instruxi, instructus* (3), *draw up.*
intellēgo, *intellexi, intellectus* (3), *to understand, to perceive, to see.*
intentus, adj., *intent, fixed.*
inter, prep. with accus., *between*; *inter diem, in the day time.*
intērea, adv., *meanwhile.*
interemit, from *interimo.*
interest, *it makes a difference, it is important, it is of importance, it matters*, see p. 58.
interficio, -feci, -fectus, -ficere (3), *to kill, slay, put to death.*
interimo, *interēmi* (3), *to kill.*
interitus (4), *end, death, destruction.*
interrogō (1), *I ask, question.*
introducō, -duxi, -ductus (3), *to bring in.*
introrumpo, -rūpi (3), *to burst in.*
intueor (2), dep., *to look at, gaze at.*
inultus, *unavenged.*
inūsītātus, adj., *unusual, extraordinary.*
inutilis, adj., *useless, unsuitable.*
invēnio, *invēni, inventus*, *to come upon, find out, discover.*
inverto, *inverti, inversus* (3), *to turn towards.*
invito (1), *to invite.*
invītus, adj., *unwilling*; te *invito* (you being unwilling), *against your will, if or since you are unwilling.*
ipse, *self*; *ipse dico, I myself say it*; *ipse dicis, you yourself say it*; *ipse dicit, he himself says it.*
irascor, *irātus* (3), dep., *I am or I get angry (with)*, with dat.
iratus, *angry, wroth.*
ire, from eo.
iri, from eo, used to form the fut. inf. passive; *dixit se vietum iri, he said that he would be conquered.*
is, ea, id, *this, that, he.*
iste, *ista, istud, that.*
it, from eo.
ita, adv., *so, thus, in such fashion.*
Italia, *Italy.*
itaque, *so, and so.*
item, adv., *likewise, also.*
īter (*itīnēris*), neut., *route, journey, march*; *iter facio, I march, travel.*
itinere, from *iter.*
itur, pres. ind. pass. of eo, *a journey is made.*
iubeo, *iussi, iussus*, *to order, command, tell.*
iucundus, adj., *pleasant.*
iūdex (*iudicis*), *a judge*; me *iudice* (I being judge), *in my opinion.*
iudico (1), *to judge.*
iunctus, from *iungo*, *joined, close together.*
iussi, from *iubeo.*
iussu, abl. of *iussus*, *by order.*
iustus, adj., *just, right.*
iuvēnis (*iuvenis*), *a young man, a youth.*
iuventus (*inventūtis*), fem., *youth, the time of youth.*

iūvo, iūvi, iutus (1), *to help*.
ivi, from eo.

Labium, *lip*.

lābor (labōris), *toil, labour*.

lābor, (3), dep., *to glide, flow*.

labōro (1), *to work*

Lacōnīcus, adj., *Laconian* (be-
longing to Laconia or Lacedaemon in Greece).

lacrīma (1), *a tear*.

laetor (1), dep., *to be glad*.

laetus, adj., *glad, joyful*.

lapis (lapidis), masc., *a stone*.

lassitudo (lassitudinis), *fatigue*.

latebrae, plur., *a hiding-place*.

lateribus, see *latus*.

Latinus, adj., *Latin, Roman*.

latro (1), *to bark*.

lātus (latēris), *a side*.

laudo (1), *to praise*.

lautus, adj., *rich*.

laxamentum, *relaxation*.

laxatus, part. of *laxo*, *loosened, loose*.

lectus (2), *bed, couch*; or *partie*.
of *lego*.

legatio (-ōnis), *embassy*.

legātus (2), *envoy, ambassador*.

legibus, from *lex*.

lēgio (legionis), *a legion*.

lēgo, lēgi, lectus (3), *read*.

lente, adv., *slowly*.

leo (leōnis), *a lion*.

lepīdus, adj., *pleasant, charming*.

In XIV. O lepidum caput!
you splendid fellow!

levo (1), *to relieve*.

lex (lēgis), *law*.

libens (libentis), adj., *willing*.

liber (libri), *book*.

liber, libēra, liberum, *free*.

liberālis, adj., *liberal, generous*.

libero (1), *to set free, deliver*.

licet, impersonal verb, *it is al-*
lowed; licet mihi, *it is allowed*
to me, it is permitted me, I may.

ligo (1), *to bind*; gressus ligare,
impede their steps.

limen (liminis), *threshold*.

lingua (1), *tongue*.

littēra (1), *a letter* (of the alpha-
bet); litterae, *a letter* (i.e. an
epistle), and *literature*.

lōcus (2), *place*, pl. loca, *parts,*
region; parentis loco est mihi,
he is in the position of father to
me.

locūtus, from *loquor*.

Londinium, *London*.

longe, adv., *far*; longius,
further.

longus, adj., *long, tall*.

lōquor, locūtus (3), dep., *to talk,*
say, speak.

lorum, *a rope*.

luce, from *lux*.

ludo (3), *to play*.

luna (1), *the moon*.

lulus (4), *play*.

Lutetia, *Paris*.

lux (lūcis), *light, light of day,*
dawn; prima luce, *at first*
light, at early dawn.

Lydia (1), *Lydia*.

Macēdo, Macedōnis (3), *a Mace-*
donian.

mācies (5), *leanness, wasting, decay*.

mācūlo (1), *to stain*.

māgis, adv., *more*.

māgister (magistri), *a master, a*
teacher.

magnitudo (magnitudinis), *size*.

māgnus, adj., *great, large, big*;
maior natu, *greater by birth,*
older; maximus natu, *eldest*.

māior (maiōris), comp. of *magnus*.

māle, adv., *badly, ill*.

māleficiūm (2), *a crime*.

mālo, *I prefer, would rather,*
choose . . . rather, see p. 170.

mālus, adj., *bad, evil*; mala
(bad things), *troubles, sorrows*.

- mānē**, neut., indeclinable, *in the morning*; or **mānē**, imperative of *maneo*.
- māneo**, *mansi*, *mansum* (2), *to remain, stay*.
- manifestus**, adj., *clear, obvious*.
- māno** (1), *to stream, flow*.
- manserinus**, from *maneo*.
- mānus** (4), fem., *a hand, a handful, a band of soldiers, the trunk (of an elephant)*.
- māre** (*maris*), *the sea*.
- mater** (*matris*), *mother*.
- maternus**, adj., *belonging to a mother*; *maternae aedes*, *your mother's house*.
- matūrus**, adj., *mature, ripe*.
- mauvult**, from *malo*, *I prefer*.
- maximus**, superlative of *magnus*.
- me**, accus. or abl. of *ego*.
- mecum**, i.e. *cum me*, *with me*.
- medicamentum**, *medicine*.
- medicīna** (1), *treatment*.
- medicus** (2), *a doctor*.
- meditans**, partic. of *meditor* (1), dep., *practising*.
- mēdius**, adj., *middle*; *media nocte*, *at midnight*; *media urbs*, *the middle of the city*.
- Megāra** (2), neut. plur.; *Megara* (a town in Greece).
- mēlior**, used as comparative of *bonus*, *better*.
- membrum**, *a limb*.
- memento**, imperative of *memini*.
- mēmīni**, a perfect with present meaning, *I remember*, takes genitive of the person (gen. or acc. of the thing).
- mēmor** (*memōris*), adj., *mindful, remembering*.
- mēmōria**, *memory, narrative*; *memoria teneo*, *I hold in my memory, I remember*.
- mensa** (1), *a table*.
- mensis** (*mensis*), masc., *a month*.
- mentior**, *mentitus*, dep., *totellies*.
- mercātor** (-ōris), *a merchant*.
- mercātus** (4), *market*.
- mercor** (1), dep., *to purchase*.
- meridiānus**, adj., *the midday's*.
- mētus** (4), *fear*.
- meus**, adj., *my, mine*.
- mī**, vocative of *meus*.
- mihi**, dative of *ego*.
- mīles** (*militis*), *a soldier*.
- mille**, adj., *a thousand*; *mille pueri*, *a thousand boys*; *mille passus*, *a thousand paces* (i.e. *a mile*). The plural *milia* (so spelt), *thousands*, is a substantive, and therefore cannot agree with another substantive; *3000 boys* is *tria milia puerorum*, *three miles tria milia passuum*.
- minimus**, used as superl. of *parvus*, *smallest*.
- minor** (*minōris*), used as comp. of *parvus*, *smaller, less*; *minus periculi*, *less of danger, less danger*.
- mīnus**, adv., *less*.
- minutus**, adj., *small*; *in rebus minutis*, *among some trifles*.
- mirābilis**, -e, adj., *wonderful, strange*.
- mirāculum**, *miracle, strange tale*.
- mirandum**, from *miror*; *neque mirandum*, *nor is it to be wondered at, no wonder*.
- miror** (1), dep., *to wonder*.
- mirus**, adj., *wonderful*.
- miser**, *misēra*, *misērū*, *unhappy, wretched, miserable*.
- misi**, from *mitto*.
- mitis**, adj., *gentle*.
- mitto**, *misi*, *missus* (3), *to send, to put*.
- moderātus**, adj., *moderate*.
- modeste**, adv., *modestly*.
- mōdo**, adv., *only*; *da modo*, *just give me*; *modo . . . modo*, *sometimes . . . sometimes*.

mōdus (2), *manner, way*; ad hunc modum loquitur, *he speaks as follows (in this way)*; eius modi, *of this (the following) kind, in this manner, as follows*.

molestus, adj., *troublesome*.

moneo (2), *to warn, advise*.

mons (montis), *masc., a mountain*.

morbus (2), *an illness*.

more, from mos, *in the manner of, like*.

mores, from mos.

mōrior, inf. mori, mortuus, *to die*.

mōror (1), dep., *to delay, linger*.

mors (moris), *death*.

mortuus, from morior, *dead*.

mōs (mōris), *manner, custom, fashion*; more nostro, *in accordance with our custom*; mos est ut scribam, *it is my habit to write*.

Moses (Mosis), *Moses*.

mōveo, mōvi, mōtus, *to move, stir, rouse*.

mox, adv., *soon*.

mulier (mulieris), *a woman*.

multitudo (-inis), *a large number, crowd, multitude*.

multo, adv., *by far, long, much*.

multum, adv., *much, greatly*.

multus, adj., *much*; multi, *many*; multum temporis (*much of time*), *much time*.

mutus, adj., *silent, dumb*.

mutuus, adj., *mutual*.

Nectus, from nanciscor (3), dep., *I find, get*.

nam, *for*.

nares (narium), fem., *the nostrils*.

narro (1), *to relate, tell, narrate*.

nascor, natus sum (3), *to be born*; novem annos natus, *nine years old*.

nātu, from natus (4), *by birth*.

nauta (1), *a sailor*.

nāvigo (1), *to sail*.

nāvis (navis), *a ship*.

ne; *ne, lest, in order that . . . not, not to*; impero tibi ne facias, *I order you not to do it*; ne dixeris, *don't say*; ne multa (dicam), *not to make a long story, in short*; ne . . . quidem, *not . . . even*; -ne asks a question without suggesting what the answer should be, e.g. Vidistine Gaium, *have you seen Caius?*

nēc, *nor*; see neque.

nēco (1), *to kill, murder*.

nēgo (1), *to deny*; nego me scire, *I say that I do not know*.

nēgōtium, *business, work*.

nēmo (acc. neminem), *nobody, no one*.

nequaquam, adv., *by no means*.

nēquē, or **nec**, *nor, and . . . not, but . . . not*; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.

nequidquam, adv., *in vain*.

nescio, *not to know, to be ignorant of*; nescio quid, *something*.

nihil, indeclinable, *nothing*; nihil cibi, *no food (nothing in the way of food)*; nihil boni, *nothing good*.

nihīlum (2), *nothing*; nihilo minor, *not a whit less*.

nīmius, adj., *too much, excessive*.

nīsi, *unless, if . . . not*.

nōbilis, adj., *famous, renowned*.

nobis, from ego.

nōceo (2), *to hurt, arm (governs dative)*.

noctis, from nox; noctu, *at night*.

nōdus (2), *knot, coil*.

nōli, imperative of nolo, *be unwilling to*; so, e.g. noli ire, *do not go*.

nolo, nolui, nolle, *I am unwilling; I do not like*; see pp. 169, 170.

nomen (nomīnis), a name.

nōmīno (1), to name, call, appoint, nominate.

non, not.

nondum, not yet.

nonne is used in asking a question when you want to suggest the answer "yes"; e.g. nonne venies? you will come, will you not?

noscīto (1), to recognise.

nosco, nōvi, nōtus (3), to become acquainted with, get to know.

nostr, nostra, nostrum, our; nostri, our men, soldiers, or army; or nostri may be gen. plur. of ego.

nōto (2), to mark.

nōtus, known; notior, better known.

novācūla (1), a razor.

nōvem, nine.

nōvi, a perfect with present meaning, I know; see nosco; or nōvi, from novus.

nōvus, adj., new, strange; quid novi est? what is the news? (literally, what of new is there?)

nox (noctis), night.

nugamentum, a trifle, a bit of trash; in XIV. nug. hominis, this absurd little creature.

nullus, adj. (gen. nullius), no, none.

num asks a question so as to suggest the answer "no," e.g. num librum meum amisisti? you have not lost my book, have you? But in indirect questions (see p. 34), it means only whether; e.g. rogavit num librum amissem, he asked me whether I had lost the book.

numen (numīnis), divine power.

numēro (1), to count.

numērus (2), number; hostium

numero habetur (he is reckoned in the number of our enemies), he is regarded as an enemy.

nummus (2), a coin, money.

nunc, now.

nunquam, adv., never.

nuntio (1), to announce, bring news, report.

nuntius (2), a messenger, a message.

nuper, adv., lately.

nusquam, adv., nowhere.

Ob, prep. with acc., on account of.

obliviscor, oblitus (3), dep., to forget; sometimes with gen.

obses (obsidis), a hostage.

obsessus, from obsideo.

obsideo, obsēdi, obsessus, to be siege.

obsides, from obses.

obstinātus, adj., stubborn, obstinate.

obsto (1), to stand in the way, oppose.

obtineo (2), to hold.

obtuli, from offero.

obvius, adj., meeting; omnes obvii, all who met them.

occasio (occasiōnis), opportunity occasion.

occāsus (4), setting.

occīdo, occīdi, occisus (3), to kill.

occīsiō (occisiōnis), murder.

occūpo (1), to seize.

oceānus (2), the ocean.

octāvus, adj., eighth; hence a name, Octavius.

ocūlus (2), an eye.

odi, a perfect with present meaning, I hate.

odium (2), hatred, hate; odio est mihi, he is hateful to me.

ollēro, obtūli, to offer; offerre se, to present oneself.

olim, adv., *once upon a time*.
omnis, adj., *all, every*.
opĕra (1), *attention*; dare operam, *to take care, to do one's best*.
opĕra, plural of opus, *works, writings*.
opĭmus, adj., *rich, succulent*.
opĭnio (opiniōnis), *opinion, idea, impression*.
opis, genitive (no nom.), fem., *help*.
oportet, an impersonal verb; me oportet, *it behoves me, it is my duty, I ought*.
oppĕto (3), *to meet, encounter*.
oppĭdum, *town*.
opportunitas (-tatis), *advantage, fortunate property*; opportunitas anulī, *the advantage which the ring gave him*.
optĭme, adv. of optimus, *very well*.
optĭmus, adj. (used as superlative of bonus), *very good, best, excellent*.
opus (opĕris), *work, task*; cibus or cibo mihi opus est, *I want food*; facto opus est, *it is needful to do*: see Notes to IX.
orācŭlum, *an oracle*.
orātio (orationis), *speech, oration*; habeo orationem, *I make a speech*.
orātor (oratōris), *orator, ambassador, spokesman*.
orbis (3), masc., *the world*.
ore, oribus, from os.
oriens (orientis), *the East*.
ōrior, ortus, dep. (4), *to rise*.
ornātus (4), *adornment, grand attire*.
ōro (1), *to ask for, beg for, pray for*.
ortus (4), *rise, rising*; or partic. of orior.
os (oris), neut., *mouth, face*.
ostendo (3), *to show*.

ovans, partic. of ovo, *triumphing, in triumph*.

Pace, from pax.

paedagogus, *schoolmaster*.

pāla (1), *the hollow (of a ring)*.

pallium, *a cloak*.

palma (1), *the palm of the hand*.

palus (palūdis), fem., *marsh*.

par (paris), adj., *like, similar*.

paratus, from paro, *prepared, ready*.

parco, peperci, parsum (3), *to spare, takes the dat.*

parcus, adj., *niggardly, stingy*.

pārens (parentis), *a parent*.

pāreo (2), *to obey, with dat.*

pares, from par, or pareo, or paro.

pario, pepĕri, partus, parĕre, *to produce, breed, get, win, acquire*.

pāro (1), *to prepare, get ready, plot*.

pars (partis), *part, quarter*.

partus, partic. of pario.

pārum, adv., *too little, not at all*.

parvus, adj., *small, little*.

passus (4), *a pace*; mille passus, *a thousand paces, i.e. a mile*.

passus, perf. part. of patior.

pastor (pastōris), *a shepherd*.

pātĕfacio, -feci, -factus (3), *to bring to light, clear up*.

pāter (patris), *a father*.

patĭna (1), *a dish*.

pātior, passus, pati, *to suffer, endure, allow*.

patria (1), *country, native country*.

pauci, adj., *a few, only a few*.

paulo, adv., *a little*; paulo ante, *a little while ago, only the other day*.

pauper (paupĕris), *poor*.

pax (pācis), *peace*; si id liceat pace tua (if this is allowed by your permission), *if you give your permission*.

pecūnia (1), *money, sum of money*; *parva pecuniā*, abl. of price, *for a small sum*.

pedibus, from *pes*.

pello, *pepūli, pulsus* (3), *to drive*.

penetro (1), *to penetrate, enter*.

penitus, adv., *thoroughly*.

peperci, from *parco*.

per, prep. with acc., *through, along; during*; *per deos*, by the Gods!

percontor (1), dep., *I inquire*.

perdo, *perdidi, perditus* (3), *to destroy, waste, ruin, lose*.

perdomo, *perdomui, perdomitus*, *perdomare*, *to thoroughly subdue*.

pereo (*per* and *eo*, p. 173), *to perish*.

perforo (1), *to make a hole in*.

pergo (3), *to go, advance, proceed*.

pericūlum, *danger, peril, trial*.

perii, *periret, perisset*, from *pereo*.

peritus, adj., with genitive, *skilled in, experienced in*.

permensus, partic. of *permetior*, dep., *to traverse*.

permotus (*per* and *moveo*), *moved*.

perniciēs (5), *destruction, disaster*.

perpetuus, adj., *perpetual, continual*.

perquiro (3), (*per* and *quaero*), *to make careful inquiry*; *perquiritur*, *careful inquiries are made*.

perseverō (1), *persist, persevere*.

persuadeo, *persuasi, persuasum*, *to persuade*; takes dative.

pertaesum est, perf. of impersonal *pertaedet me*, *it irks me, I am tired of*; *me illius vitae pertaesum est*, *I was tired of that life*.

perterritus, *very alarmed*.

pertimesco, -timui, *to be very much afraid*.

pervēnio, *pervēni*, *to reach, arrive, come into somebody's hands*.

pes (*pēdis*), *a foot*.

pessimus, used as superlative of *malus*, *very bad, worst, wicked*.

pēto, *petivi* and *petii*, *petitus*, *petēre* (3), *to ask for, to make for, seek, go to*; *peto a te*, *I ask from you*.

philosōphus (2), *a philosopher*.

piger, *pigra, pigrum*, *lazy, idle*.

piscīna (1), *a fish-pond*.

placide, adv., *quietly*.

planta (1), *a plant*.

plastrum (2), *a waggon*.

plēnus, adj., *full*.

plerumque, adv., *very often*.

pluit (3), *it rains*.

plumo (1), *to be covered with feathers*.

plurimum, adv., *very much*.

plurimus, used as superlative of *multus*, *very many, very much*.

plus, adj., *more*.

poena (1), *punishment, penalty*; *poenas dare*, *to pay the penalty, suffer punishment*.

poēta, *poet*.

pondus (*pondēris*), *weight*.

pōno, *pōni, pōsitus* (3), *to put, pitch, place, post*.

pous (*pontis*), masc., *a bridge*.

poposci, from *poseo*.

popūlus (2), *a people, the populace*.

porrigo (3), *to stretch out*.

porta (1), *a gate*; *ad portam*, *at the gate*.

portus (4), *a harbour*.

posco, *poposci* (3), *to demand*.

positus, partic. of *pono*.

possum, *potui, posse*, *I am able*; see p. 168.

post, prep. with acc., *after*; adv., *afterwards*.

postea, adv., *afterwards, after that*.

posterior (-oris), adj., *following, later*.

posterus, adj., *next*.

posthac, adv., *henceforth, in future.*
 postquam, conj., *after that.*
 postremo, adv., *at last.*
 postrēmus, adj., *last.*
 postridie, *on the following day.*
 posui, see pono.
poteram, potest, potui, from possum.
 praebeo (2), *to give, afford.*
 praecēpit, from praecipio.
 praiceps (praecipitis), *headlong, head foremost.*
 praeceptor, *master, teacher.*
 praecipio, praecēpi, praecipere, *to order.*
 praecipito (1), *throw down.*
 praecūdo (3), *to stop.*
praeda (1), *booty, prize.*
 praedico (1), *to give out, declare.*
praelium, *a battle.*
praemitto (3), *to send before, or first.*
praemium (2), *a reward.*
 praesens (praesentis), *present.*
praesidium, *a protection.*
praesto, praestiti, praestitum (1), *to stand before, stand out, be superior to, excel; praestant tibi, they are superior to you; praestat, it is better.*
 praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides, beyond.*
 praetereo, *I go by.*
 precario, adv., *by entreaty, by mere favour, on sufferance.*
 prēces (precum), plur., *prayers.*
 prēcō (1), dep., *to pray, ask for.*
prēmo, pressi, pressus (3), *to press, pinch.*
 pretium (2), *price, money.*
 primo, adv., *at first.*
prīmus, adj., *first.*
 prior (priōris), *former, preceding.*
 priusquam, conj., *before that.*
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, for, for the sake of, in proportion to, instead of.*

procēdo, processi, processum (3), *to advance, go forward.*
 prōcul, adv., *far, far off; procul dubio (far from doubt), without a doubt, certainly.*
proditio (proditionis), *treason; proditiōis condemnare, to condemn on a charge of treason.*
 prodo, prodīdi, proditus (3), *to hand down.*
 profecto, adv., *certainly, to be sure; or profecto may be from proficiscor.*
profectus, from proficiscor.
prōficiscor, profectus (3), dep., *to set out, start; ad urbem prof., I set out for the city.*
 prōfiteor, professus, dep., *to profess, make a profession of.*
 profundum, *the deep (sea).*
prōgrēdior, progressus, progrēdi, dep., *to advance, go forward.*
 prolixior (comparative), *somewhat prolonged.*
prōmitto, promisi, promissum (3), *to promise.*
 prōpe, adv., *near, nearly.*
 prōpēro (1), *to hasten.*
prōpinquus (2), *a relation.*
 propior, adv., comp. of prope, *nearer.*
 propter, adv., *near, by his side.*
 prorsus, adv., *entirely, direct, straight.*
 prorumpo, prorūpi, proruptus (3), *to burst forth, dart off.*
 provēho, -vexi, -vectus (3), *to carry forward; provehor, to advance, sail out.*
 provincia (1), *province, country.*
proximus, superl. of prope, *nearest, next, very near.*
 prudentia, *wisdom.*
 publice, adv., *publicly, by the state.*
puella (1), *girl.*
puer (puēri), *a boy.*

pueritia (1), *boyhood*.

pugna (1), *a battle*.

pugno (1), *to fight*.

pulcher, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beautiful*; *pulchrior*, *more beautiful*; *pulcherrimus*, *most beautiful*.

pulso (1), *to strike, batter, appeal to*.

pupilla (1), *the pupil* (of the eye).

pūto (1), *to think*.

Pygmaei, *the Pygmies*.

Quaero, *quaesivi*, *quaesitus*, *to seek, look for, try to find out, to ask, inquire*; *ex me quaerunt*, *they ask me*.

quaesiveratque, *quaesiverat* and *que* (*and*).

quaesivi, *from quaero*.

quaeso (3), *I pray*.

quālis, *adj.*, *talis* . . . *qualis*, *of such a kind* . . . *as*.

quam, *than*; or *quam* may be *acc. fem. sing. of qui*; *quam celerrime*, *as quickly as possible*; *quam non est tutum*, *how unsafe it is*.

quamdiu, *as long as*.

quamquam, *although*.

quando, *when*; *si quando*, *if ever*.

quantus, *how great? how much?*

quanti, *at what price? for what? for how much?* *quantum temporis*, *how much time?*

quare, *qua* and *re*, *abl. of qui* and *res*, *lit. by which thing, i.e. therefore, consequently*.

quartus, *adj.*, *fourth*.

quāsi, *as if*.

que, *and*; *pueri puellaeque*, *boys and girls*.

quemadmodum, *as*.

qui, *quae*, *quod*, *gen. cuius*, *rela-*

tive pronoun, who, which, what. In English *that* is also used instead, or the *rel. pronoun* is entirely omitted: *Amisi librum quem mihi dedisti* is either *I have lost the book which you gave me*, or *I have lost the book that you gave me*, or *I have lost the book you gave me*. Followed by the subjunctive (see Section 46) *qui* may be equivalent to *ut, to, in order to*; *qui extorqueat*, *to wring*.

Qui, *quae*, *quod*, is used instead of *quis*, *quid* in agreement with a substantive, both as an indefinite pronoun with *ne*, *num*, *si*, and as an interrogative (see Section 41); *si qui puer loquitur*, *if any boy is talking*; *qui puer loquitur?* *what boy is talking?*

quia, *conj.*, *because*.

quibusdam, *from quidam*.

quicquam or *quidquam*, *neut. of quisquam*, *anything*.

quid, see *quis*; *quid!* *what!*

quidam, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *a certain, a certain one*.

quidem, *adv.*, *indeed, it is true*; *ne* . . . *quidem*, *not even*; *optime quidem valeo*, *I am well enough*.

quidquam, *neut. of quisquam*, *anything*.

quidquid, *neut. of quisquis*, *whatsoever*; *quidquid auri est*, *whatever gold there is*.

quies (*quīētis*), *rest, sleep*.

quiesco, *quīēvi* (3), *to rest*.

quīētus, *adj.*, *quiet*.

quīn (*i.e. qui + ne*), *but that, who* . . . *not*; see p. 103.

quinam; *quonam modo*, *by what possible way*.

quindecimviri, *the fifteen commissioners*.

quis, quid, is (1) an interrogative pronoun, *who? what?*
Quis venit? *who is coming?*
Rogo quid faciat, *I ask what he is doing.* **Quid cibi est?** *what food is there?*

(2) An indefinite pronoun, *any one, anything, any.* In this sense **quis**, **quid** are used with **num**, **si**, **ne**, **cum**, and **nisi**. **Num quis venit?** *is any one coming?* **Si quid dicit,** *if he says anything.* **Rogo num quid faciat,** *I ask whether he is doing anything.* **Si quid est periculi,** *if there is any danger.*

As to when **qui** is used instead of **quis**, see under **qui**.

quispiam, *some or other, anybody.*

quisquam, *any one*, used only in negative sentences.

quisque, *each, everybody.*

quo (1), *adv., whither? where?*
 or (2) *abl. of qui*, used with comparatives, meaning *in order that*, see p. 97.

quod, *because*; see **qui**.

quodam from **quidam**.

quominus, *in order that . . . not*; see p. 101.

quomodo, *i.e. quo modo, in what way? how?*

quoniam, *since.*

quodque, *also, too, even.*

quodt, *how many?*

quotannis, *every year.*

quoties, *as often as.*

Rado, **rasi**, **rasum** (3), *to shave.*

ramus (2), *a branch.*

raserat, see **rado**.

ratio (rationis), *system.*

recipio, **recēpi**, *to get back*; see **recipere**, *to betake himself again.*

recognitio (-ōnis), *recognition.*

recondo, **recondidi** (3), *to put back, to hide.*

recordor (1), *dep., to remember.*

rectene, **recte** and **ne**, **recte**, *rightly*; **recte valeo**, *I am quite well.*

recumbo, **recubui** (3), *to lie down again, to lie down.*

recupero, *to recover.*

recūso (1), *to object, make objections, refuse*; **non recusavit quominus venirem**, *he did not object to my coming.*

reddo, **reddidi**, **redditus** (3), *to give back, return (something)*; **divitem me reddidit**, *he made me rich.*

redeo, **redii**, **redire** (see **eo**, pp. 173-5), *to go back, return.*

redit, from **redeo**.

redūces, from **redux**.

redux (**redūcis**), *adj., returning.*

rēgam, from **rego**.

rēgam, from **rex**.

rēgina (1), *queen.*

rēgio, *region.*

regius, *adj., belonging to the king, royal.*

rēgo, **rex**, **rectus** (3), *to rule, command.*

relictus from **relinquo**.

rēlinquo, **reliqui**, **relictus** (3), *to leave, leave behind.*

reliquus, *adj., remaining, left over.*

remōtus, *partic. of removeo, remote, distant.*

repente, *adv., suddenly.*

rēpērio, **rēpēri**, **repertus**, *to find.*

requiro, **requisivi**, **requisitus** (3), *to look for.*

res (5), *thing, affair, matter, event, fact, occurrence.*

resolvo (3), *to undo.*

respondeo, **respondi**, **responsum** (2), *to answer.*

- reus**, adj., *accused*; **reus fit**, *is put on his trial*.
revello, **revelli**, **revulsus** (3), *to tear out, tear away, pull out*.
revertor, **reversus** (3), *dep., to return*.
revincio, **revinxi**, **revinctus** (3), *to tie*.
reviso (3), *to revisit*.
rex (rēgis), *a king*.
Rhēnus (2), *the Rhine*.
rīdeo, **rīsī**, **rīsum**, *to laugh, to laugh at*.
rītus (4), *fashion, manner*; **avium ritu**, *like birds*.
rōgo (1), *to ask, ask for*; **multa rogat**, *he asks many questions*.
Roma (1), *Rome*.
Romānus, adj., *Roman*.
Rōmūlus, *first king of Rome*.
ruber, **rubra**, **rubrum**, *red*.
rumpo (3), *to break*.
rursus, adv., *again*.
rus (ruris), *country*; **rure**, *in the country, from the country*; **rus**, acc., *to the country*.
rusticus, adj., *country*.
Sacrarium, *shrine, chapel*.
saepe, adv., *often*.
saevio, *to rage*; **saeviens**, *raging, savage*.
salto (1), *to dance*.
salus (salūtis), fem., *health, safety, life*.
salūto (1), *to salute, to bid good-day*.
salveo, *I am well*; the imperative **salve** is a term of salutation; *good-day! I hope you are well! Welcome!*
sāne, adv., *truly, surely*. In XIV. **sane ut tenes**, *how well you remember, to be sure!*
sanguis (sanguinis), masc., *blood*.
sāpiens (sapientis), adj., *wise, a wise man*.
sapientia (1), *wisdom*.
sarcio, *to repair, make good*.
sātis, adv., *enough*; **satis cibi**, *enough (of) food*.
scienter, adv., *skilfully*.
scilicet, *you see*.
scio (4), *to know*.
scribo, **scripsi**, **scriptus** (3), *to write*.
scriptor (scriptōris), *writer*.
se, or **sese**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.
secum, *se and cum*.
secutus, *from sequor*.
sed, *but*.
seguis (segnis), adj., *sluggish, lazy, dull*.
segniter, adv., *sluggishly, lazily*.
semel, adv., *once*; **semel et saepius**, *once and again, repeatedly*.
semper, *always*.
sēnex (senis), *an old man*.
sensim, adv., *gradually*.
sententia (1), *opinion, decision*; in **eadem sententia manere**, *to maintain one's opinion*.
sentio, **sensi** (4), *to feel, observe, notice, be aware of*; **idem sentio**, *I agree*.
sēquor, **secūtus**, *dep. (3), to follow*.
serius, adj., *serious*.
sermo (sermōnis), *talk*.
serpens (serpentis), fem., *a serpent, snake*.
serrūla (1), *a small saw*.
servo (1), *to keep, preserve, save*.
servus (2), *a slave, servant*.
sex, *six*.
si, *if*.
sibi, dat. of **se**.
Sibyllinus, adj., *belonging to the Sibyl, Sibylline*.
sic, *so*.
sieco (1), *to dry*.
Sicilia (1), *Sicily*.

sicūti, *just as*.

significo (1), *to give a sign*.

silentium, *silence*.

silva, *wood*.

sīmīlis, adj., *like*; takes dat. or gen. (dat. rather of the thing, gen. of the person).

sīmūl, adv., *together, at the same time*.

simūlo (1), *to pretend*.

sīne, prep. with abl., *without*.

singūlus, adj., *each*.

sītio, *to be thirsty*.

sītus (4), *neglect, decay*.

soccus (2), *a shoe*.

sol (sōlis), *the sun*; sole medio, *in the midday heat*.

sōleo, perf. solūtus sum, *to be accustomed*.

sōlītudo (solitudīnis), *solitude, or a solitude, a desert place*.

sōlus (gen. solius), *only, alone*.

solum, *only*.

solutus, from solvo.

solvo, solvi, solūtus (3), *to loose, cut loose, set free, pay a sum of money*; navem solvo (*I untie my ship, i.e.*) *I set sail*.

somnium, *a dream*.

somnus (2), *sleep*.

sonītus (4), *a sound*.

sōnus (2), *a sound*.

sōror (sorōris), *sister*.

spargo (3), *to scatter, cover*.

spātior (1), dep., *to walk about*.

specīmēn, *specimen, example*.

spectātor (spectātōris), *spectator*.

spēcus (4), fem., *a cave*.

spēro (1), *to hope, hope for, expect*.

spes (5), *hope*.

spirītus (4), *breath, breathing*; spiritus florum, *the scent of flowers*.

squāleo (2), *to be dirty*.

stātīm, adv., *at once*.

stercus (stercōris), neut., *dung, manure*.

stirps (stirpis), *root, splinter of wood*.

sto, stēti, stātum (1), *to stand*.

studeo, *I am eager*; litteris studere, *to study literature, pursue literary studies*.

stultus, adj., *foolish*.

stupefacio, stupefeci, stupefactus (3), *to astonish, strike dumb*.

sub, prep., with abl. (and acc.), *under*.

subdo, subdīdi (3), *to put oneself under*.

subdūco (3), *to remove*; subducito te, *retire, withdraw*.

subīto, adv., *suddenly*.

sublatus, see tollo.

subornandus, *must be provided, instigated*.

subvēnio, subvēni, subventum, *to come to somebody's assistance, to help*; subvenio tibi, *I help you*.

succēdo, successi (3); si non successerit, *if all does not go well, i.e. if I don't succeed*.

suffragium, *vote*.

suggēro (3), *to bring up*.

summus, adj., *highest, greatest*; in summa quereu (on the oak where it is highest, i.e.), *at the top of the oak*.

super, prep. with acc. and abl., *above*.

superbus, adj., *proud*. Tarquinius Superbus, *a king of Rome*.

supēro (1), *to exceed, surpass*.

supra, adv., *above, on the top*; prep. with acc., *above, beyond*.

surdus, adj., *deaf*.

surrexi, perf. from surgo (3), *I rise*.

suspicio (ōnis), *suspicion*.

sustulit, see tollo.

sutor (sutōris), *shoemaker, cobbler*.

suus, adj., *his own, etc.*

Taberna (1), *inn, tavern, shop, dispensary.*

taceo, *to be silent.*

Taenarum, a promontory in Laconia in the south of Greece.

taeter, taetra, taetrum, *dirty, foul.*

talentum, *a talent.*

tālis, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv., *so, so much.*

tāmen, *however.*

tamquam or **tamquam si**, *as if.*

tandem, *at last.*

tantum, adv., *so, so much.*

tantus, adj., *such, so great, such big; tanti, so much, for such a price.*

tardus, adj., *slow; tardius, slower than it might, rather slowly.*

te, acc. or abl. of tu.

tecum, te and cum.

temēre, adv., *at random.*

tempero (1), *to refrain; necare tempero, I refrain from killing.*

tempestas (tempestatis), *weather.*

templum, *a temple.*

tempus (tempōris), *time; tempore, at the proper time.*

teneo, tenui, tentus, *to hold.*

tenūis, adj., *thin.*

terminus (2), *end.*

terra (1), *land, country, the earth, ground, the world.*

terreo, terrui, territus, *to frighten, terrify.*

terrificus, adj., *terrible.*

tertius, adj., *third.*

tibi, from tu.

timeo (2), *to fear.*

tīmor (timōris), *fear.*

tollo, sustūli, sublātus (3), *to raise, lift, remove out of the way, take away.*

tondeo, totondi, tonsus, *to cut the hair, shave.*

tonsor (tonsōris), *hair-cutter, barber.*

tonstrīna (1), *a hair-cutter's shop.*

torreo, torrui, tostus, *to roast.*

tot, *so many.*

totonderit, from tondeo.

tōtus (gen. totius), adj., *the whole.*

trādo (3), *hand over, deliver, relate.*

transeo (trans, across, and eo), *to go across, to cross; to peruse (a book).*

transfēro, trans and fero, *to transfer, transplant, move, shift.*

transitūri, *when about to cross, from transeo.*

tres, tria, *three.*

triduum, *a space of three days.*

triennium, *a space of three years.*

tristis, adj., *sad, gloomy.*

trium, from tres.

Troia, *Troy.*

trucido (1), *murder.*

tu, *thou, you.*

tuli, see fero, p. 171.

tum, *then.*

tumultus (4), *tumult, confusion.*

tunc, *then.*

tunica (1), *a tunic, coat.*

turbo (1), *to disturb.*

turpis, adj., *base, disgraceful, bad.*

tutus, adj., *safe.*

tuus, *thy, your.*

Ubi, *where? when? or where, when (not interrogative).*

ubicunque, *wherever.*

ubique, *everywhere.*

ullus (gen. ullius), adj., *any.*

ultimus, adj., *very distant.*

una, adv., *together.*

unda (1), *wave.*

unde, adv., *from where, whence.*

unguentum, *scent, perfume*.
 universi, *all* (without exception).
 unquam, *ever*.
 unus, adj., (gen. unius), *one*.
 urbs (urbis), *a city*.
 usus, from utor.
 ut, conj., (1) *that, in order to*;
 (2) *that, so that*; (3) *as*.
 uter, utra, utrum, *which of two people?*
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each*
 (of two), *both*.
 utilis, e, adj., *useful*.
 utique, *at any rate*.
 utor, usus sum (3), *to use, to handle*; the verb is active in meaning though passive in form. It takes the ablative.
 utraque, see uterque.
 uxor (uxoris), *wife*.

 Vagina (1), *sheath*.
 vāleo, valui, valitum, *I am well*.
 vastitudo (-dinis), *enormous size*.
 vasto (1), *to lay waste, to waste*.
 vectus, from veho.
 vehementer, adv., *hard, eagerly*.
 veho, vexi, vectus (3), *to carry*;
 vehor, *I am carried, I ride*.
 velle, infin. of volo.
 velut, conj., *as if, like*; velut hostias, *as if they were victims, as they do victims*.
 venālis, adj., *for sale*; libri venales, *books for sale*.
 vendo, vendidi, venditus (3), *to sell*.
 venerandus, adj., *honoured*.
 venia (1), *pardon, leave, permission*.
 vēnio, vēni, ventum (4), *to come*.
 vēnor (1), dep., *to hunt*.
 ventum est, perf. pass. of venio, used impersonally, *people came, we came*.
 ventus (2), *wind*.
 verber (verbēris), neut., *a blow*.

verbum, *a word*; verba dare, in Tr. XIV., see Notes.
 vereor, veritus, dep. (2), *to fear*;
 vereor ut (with subj.), *to fear that . . . not*.
 veritus, from vereor.
 vēro, adv., *but, however*.
 verito, verti, versus (3), *turn, change*; se vertere, *to turn themselves, i.e. to turn their backs and flee*.
 verum, *the truth*; or adv., *but*.
 vērus, adj., *true*.
 vescor (3), dep., *to feed on, eat*; governs the abl.
 vespere, or vespēri, *in the evening*.
 vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*.
 vestigium, *a trace*; *the sole of the foot*.
 vestis (vestis), *clothing, clothes*.
 vestitus (4), *robes*.
 vētus (vetēris), adj., *ancient, in old times*.
 vi, from vis; omni vi, *with all one's might*.
 via, way, road.
 vici, from vinco.
 victor (victōris), *a conqueror*.
 victoria, *victory*.
 victum, from vinco (or vivo).
 vīdeo, vīdi, vīsus, *to see*; videor, *to seem, appear*.
 vīginti, indeclinable, *twenty*.
 vigor (vigōris), *vigour*.
 vilitas (vilitātis), *cheapness*.
 vim, see vis.
 vincio, vinxi, vinctus (4), *to bind, make a prisoner of*.
 vinco, vici, victus (3), *to conquer*.
 vinctus, from vincio.
 vinculum, *a chain*.
 vinum, *wine*.
 vinxit, from vincio.
 vir (vīri), *a man, a great man*.
 vīres, plur. of vis, *strength, powers*.

- virtūs** (virtūtis), fem., *virtue, bravery.*
- vis**, 2nd person of volo (*I wish*); or **vis** (acc. vim, abl. vi, pl. vires, virium), *violence, force, strength.*
- viscēra** (viscerum), neut. plur., *flesh.*
- visne**, vis and -uē.
- viso** (3), *to visit*; or viso may be abl. of visus, the partic. of video.
- visum**, from video.
- vīta** (1), *life.*
- vitreus**, adj., *made of glass*; vitrea, *things made of glass, glass*
- vīvo**, vixi, victum (3), *to live.*
- vīvus**, adj., *living, alive.*
- vixi**, from vivo.
- vobis**, from tu.
- vōco** (1), *to call, summon.*
- volo**, volui, velle, *to wish, want, be willing, determine*; see p. 169; quid sibi vult? *what does he mean?*
- volūmen** (voluminis), *a roll.*
- vos**, plur. of tu.
- vox** (vōcis), *voice, saying, utterance, word*; magna voce, *in a loud voice.*
- vulnus** (vulnēris), *a wound.*
- vult**, from volo.
- vultus** (4), *look, expression.*

CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS

REGULAR VERBS

AMO

MONEO

REGO

AUDIO

IRREGULAR VERBS

1. SUM

2. POSSUM

3. VOLO

4. NOLO

5. MALO

6. FERO

7. FIO

8. EO

9. CAPIO

M

THE REGULAR VERBS: FOUR CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I love or am loving, etc.

Present.	{	Ām-	ō	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
		Mōn-	ēō	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
		Rēg-	ō	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	unt
		Aud-	iō	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	iunt

I will or shall love, etc.

Fut. Simp.	{	Āmā-	bō	bīs	bīt	bīmūs	bītīs	bunt
		Mōnē-						
		Rēg-	am	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
		Audī-						

I was loving, etc.

Imperfect.	{	Āmā-	bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
		Mōnē-						
		Rēg-ē-						
		Audī-ē-						

I loved or have loved, etc.

Perfect.	{	Āmāv-	i	istī	īt	īmūs	istīs	ērunt or ērē
		Mōnū-						
		Rex-						
		Audīv. ¹						

I shall have loved, etc.

Fut. Perf.	{	Āmāv-	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	erint
		Mōnū-						
		Rex-						
		Audīv-						

I had loved, etc.

Pluperf.	{	Āmāv-	eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	erant
		Mōnū-						
		Rex-						
		Audīv-						

¹ The letter *v* is often dropped in *audivī*, *audivero*, *audivissem*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	{ <div> Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Aud- </div>	em ēam am īam	ēs ēās ās īās	ēt ēāt āt iāt	ēmūs ēāmūs āmūs iāmūs	ētis ēātīs ātīs iātīs	ent ēant ant iant
Imperfect.	{ <div> Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī- </div>	rem	rēs	rēt	rēmūs	rētīs	rent
Perfect.	{ <div> Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv- </div>	ērim	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērint
Pluperf.	{ <div> Āmāv-¹ Mōnū- Rex- Audīv- </div>	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.²

Love, etc.

	S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	Pl. 2.
Äm-	ā	ātē	Rēg-	ē	ītē
Mön-	ē	ētē	Aud-	ī	ītē

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

Pres.		Perf.		
Āmā-	} rē	Āmāv-	} issē	Ām-and-
Mōnē-		Mōnū-		Mōn-end-
Rēgē-		Rex-		Rēg-end-
Audi-		Audiv-		Audi-end-
				um, ī, ō

To love, be loving, etc. To have loved.

INFINITIVE Fut.		PART. Pres.		SUPINES.		PART. Fut.
Āmāt-	} urus esse	Ām-	} ans	Āmāt-	} um, ū	ūrūs
Mōnīt-				Mōnīt-		
Rect-				Rēg-		
Audīt-				Audī-		
		<i>Loving, etc.</i>				<i>About to love, etc.</i>

¹ Amavissem may be contracted to amassem.

² The imperative 'amato,' 'moneto,' etc., is omitted, as it will not be required by the beginner; see p. 125.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

I am loved, I am being loved, etc.

Present.	Ām-	ōr	ārīs	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
	Mōn-	ēōr	ērīs	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
	Rēg-	ōr	ērīs	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	untūr
	Aud-	iōr	irīs	itūr	imūr	imīnī	iuntūr

I shall be loved, etc.

Fut. Simp.	Āmā-	{	bōr	bērīs or	bītūr	bīmūr	bīmīnī	buntūr
	Mōnē-			bērē				
	Rēg-		ār	ērīs or	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
	Audī-			ērē				

I was loved, etc.

Imperfect.	Āmā-	{	bār	bārīs	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr
	Mōnē-			or bārē				
	Rēgē-							
	Audī-ē-							

I have been loved, etc.

Perfect.	Āmāt-	{	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Mōnīt-		sum	ēs	est	sūmūs	estīs	sunt
	Rect-							
	Audīt-							

I shall have been loved, etc.

Fut. Perf.	Āmāt-	{	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Mōnīt-		ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
	Rect-							
	Audīt-							

I had been loved, etc.

Pluperf.	Āmāt-	{	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Mōnīt-		ēram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
	Rect-							
	Audīt-							

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. 2. Pl. 2.

Āmā-	{	rē	mīnī	Rēg-
Mōnē-				Audī

Present.

S. 2. Pl. 2.

ērē	īmīnī
rē	mīnī

Be loved, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{</
----------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	-----

INFINITIVE.

Present.		Perfect.		Future.		
Ămā-	} rI	Amāt-	} ūs essē	Amāt-	} um Irī	
Mōnē-		Mōnīt-		Mōnīt-		
Rēg-		I		Rect-		Rect-
AudI-		rI		Audīt-		Audīt-
<i>To be loved, etc.</i>		<i>To have been loved, etc.</i>		<i>To be about to be loved, etc.</i>		

PARTICIPLE Perfect.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ămat-} \\ \text{Mönīt-} \\ \text{Rect-} \\ \text{Audīt-} \end{array} \right\}$	ūs
<i>Having been loved, etc.</i>	

GERUNDIVE.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ămand-} \\ \text{Mönend-} \\ \text{Rэгend-} \\ \text{Audīend-} \end{array} \right\}$	ūs
<i>Fit to be loved, etc.</i>	

IRREGULAR VERBS

1. **Esse**, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Sum,	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Sumus,	<i>We are</i>
	es,	<i>thou art or you are</i>		estis,	<i>you are</i>
	est,	<i>he, she, or it, is.</i>		sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

Es translates "you are" only when one person is spoken to.

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ēro,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Erĭmus,	<i>We shall be</i>
	eris,	<i>you will be</i>		erĭtis,	<i>you will be</i>
	erit,	<i>he will be.</i>		erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Eram,	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Erāmus,	<i>We were</i>
	eras,	<i>you were</i>		erātis,	<i>you were</i>
	erat,	<i>he was.</i>		erant,	<i>they were.</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fui,	<i>I have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Fuĭmus,	<i>We have been</i>
		<i>or I was</i>			<i>or we were</i>
	fuisti,	<i>you have been</i>		fuistis,	<i>you have been</i>
		<i>or you were</i>			<i>or you were</i>
	fuit,	<i>he has been</i>		fuērunt,	<i>they have been</i>
		<i>or he was.</i>		<i>and fuēre,</i>	<i>or they were.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fuĕro,	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Fuĕrĭmus,	<i>We shall have been</i>
	fuĕris,	<i>you will have been</i>		fuĕrĭtis,	<i>you will have been</i>
	fuĕrit,	<i>he will have been.</i>		fuĕrint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fuĕram,	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Fuĕrāmus,	<i>We had been</i>
	fuĕras,	<i>you had been</i>		fuĕrātis,	<i>you had been</i>
	fuĕrat,	<i>he had been.</i>		fuĕrant,	<i>they had been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Es,	} <i>Be thou</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Este,	} <i>Be ye</i>
esto,		estōte,	
esto,		sunto,	
	<i>let him be.</i>		<i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sim,	<i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Simus,	<i>We may be</i>
sis,	<i>thou mayst be</i>	sitis,	<i>ye may be</i>
sit,	<i>he may be.</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Essem or	} <i>I might be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Essēmus or	} <i>We might be</i>
forem,		forēmus,	
esses or		essētis or	
fores,	} <i>thou mightst be</i>	forētis,	} <i>ye might be</i>
esset or		essent or	
foret,	<i>he might be.</i>	forent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuērim,	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuerīmus,	<i>We may have been</i>
fueris,	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	fuerītis,	<i>ye may have been</i>
fuerit,	<i>he may have been.</i>	fuerint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Fuissem,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	<i>P.</i> Fuissēmus,	<i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
fuiſſes,	<i>thou wouldst</i>		fuiſſētis,	<i>ye would</i>	
fuiſſet,	<i>he would</i>		fuiſſent,	<i>they would</i>	
		<i>been.</i>			<i>been.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	Esse,	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,	Fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fōre or fūtūrus esse,	<i>to be about to be.</i>
FUTURE PARTICIPLE,	Futurus	<i>about to be.</i>

2. **Possum**, *I am able, I can.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> possum pōtes potest	<i>S.</i> possim possis possit
	<i>P.</i> possumus potestis possunt	<i>P.</i> possimus possitis possint
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> poteram poteras poterat	<i>S.</i> possem posses posset
	<i>P.</i> poteramus poteratis poterant	<i>P.</i> possemus possetis possent
<i>Future.</i>	potero, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	potui, etc.	potuerim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	potueram, etc.	potuissem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	potuero, etc.	

INFINITIVE.

Present, posse.*Perfect*, potuisse.*Present Participle*, potens (adj.)

3. **Vōlo**, *I am willing, I wish.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> volo vis vult	<i>S.</i> vēlim velis velit
	<i>P.</i> volūmus vultis volunt	<i>P.</i> velīmus velitis velint
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> volebam volebas, etc.	<i>S.</i> vellem velles vellet
		<i>P.</i> vellemus velletis vellent
<i>Future.</i>	<i>S.</i> volam voles, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> volui voluisti, etc.	<i>S.</i> voluerim volueris, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	volueram, etc.	voluissem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> voluero, etc.	

INFINITIVE.

Present, **velle**. *Perfect*, **voluisse**.

Present Participle, **volens**.

NO IMPERATIVE.

4. **Nōlo**, *I am unwilling.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> nolo nonvis nonvult	<i>S.</i> nolim nolis nolit
	<i>P.</i> nolūmus nonvultis nolunt	<i>P.</i> nolīmus nolitis nolint

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		<i>S.</i> nollem nolles nollet
<i>Imperfect.</i>	nolebam, etc.	<i>P.</i> nollemus nollētis nollent
<i>Future.</i>	nolam noles, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	nolui, etc.	noluerim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	nolueram, etc.	noluissem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	noluerō, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. *S.* noli } *do not.*
P. nolite }

INFINITIVE.

Present, nolle. *Perfect, noluisse.*

Present Participle, nolens.

Note.—*Nolo* used to be *ne-volo*.

5. *Mālo, I had rather, I prefer.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>S.</i> mālo mavis mavult	<i>S.</i> malim malis malit
<i>Present.</i>	<i>P.</i> malūmus mavultis malunt	<i>P.</i> malimus mallitis mallint
		<i>S.</i> mallem malles mallet
<i>Imperfect.</i>	malebam, etc.	<i>P.</i> mallemus mallētis mallent

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Future.</i>	malam males, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	malui, etc.	maluerim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	malueram, etc.	maluissem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	maluero, etc.	

INFINITIVE.	
<i>Present, malle.</i>	<i>Perfect, maluisse.</i>

6. **Fĕro, I bring.**

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> fero fers fert	feram feras, etc.
	<i>P.</i> ferimus fertis ferunt	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ferebam, etc.	<i>S.</i> ferrem ferres ferret <i>P.</i> ferremus ferretis ferrent
<i>Future.</i>	feram feres, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	tŭli, etc.	tulerim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	tuleram, etc.	tulissem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	tulero, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>S.</i> fer <i>P.</i> ferite } <i>bring.</i>

Shorter Latin Course

INFINITIVE.

Present, ferre. Perfect, tulisse.

Future, lāturus esse.

Present Participle, ferens.

Future Participle, laturus.

Gerund, ferendi, -do, -dum.

Supines, latum, latu.

Obs. 1. Like fero are conjugated its compounds affero, confero, etc.

Obs. 2. You observe that there are here really three distinct verbs. The one that goes to make the supine appears again in sub-latum, the supine of tollo.

Feror, I am brought.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. feror

ferris

fertur

Present.

P. ferimur

ferimini

feruntur

ferar

feraris, etc.

Imperfect.

ferebar, etc.

S. ferrer

ferrēris

ferretur

P. ferremur

ferremini

ferrentur

Future.

ferar

fereris, etc.

Perfect.

latus sum, etc.

latus sim, etc.

Pluperfect.

latus eram, etc.

latus essem, etc.

Future Perfect.

latus ero, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, S. ferre.

P. ferimini.

INFINITIVE.

Present, ferri.

Perfect, latus esse.

Future, latum iri.

Past Participle, latus. Gerundive, ferendus.

7. **Fio**, *I am made, I become.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> fio	
	fis	
	fit	fiam
	<i>P.</i> fimus	fias, etc.
	fitis	
	fiunt	
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>S.</i> fiërem
		fieres
		fieret
		<i>P.</i> fieremus
		fieretis
		fierent
<i>Future.</i>	fiam	
	fies, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	factus sum, etc.	factus sim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	factus eram, etc.	factus essem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	factus ero, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

Present, *S.* fi.
P. fite.

INFINITIVE.

Present, fiëri. *Perfect,* factus esse.

Future, factum iri.

Past Participle, factus. *Gerundive,* faciendus.

8. **Eo**, *I go.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> eo	<i>S.</i> eam
	is	eas
	it	eat
	<i>P.</i> imus	<i>P.</i> eamus
	itis	eatis
	eunt	eant

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> ibam ibas ibat	<i>S.</i> irem ires iret
	<i>P.</i> ibamus ibatis ibant	<i>P.</i> iremus iretis irent
<i>Future.</i>	<i>S.</i> ibo ibis ibit	
	<i>P.</i> ibīmus ibītis ibunt	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> ii ¹ isti iit	<i>S.</i> ierim ieris ierit
	<i>P.</i> iimus istis ierunt <i>and</i> iere	<i>P.</i> ierimus ieritis ierint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> ieram ieras ierat	<i>S.</i> issem ² isses isset
	<i>P.</i> ieramus ieratis ierant	<i>P.</i> issemus issetis issent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	<i>S.</i> iero ieris ierit	<i>P.</i> ierimus ieritis ierint

IMPERATIVE.

S. i }
P. ite } *go !*

INFINITIVE.

Present, ire. *Perfect, isse.* ³ *Future, iturus esse.*
Pres. Part. iens (Gen. euntis). *Fut. Part. iturus.*
Gerundive, eundi, -do, -dum. *Supines, itum, itu.*

¹ Or *ivi, ivisti*, etc.² Or *iissem*.³ Or *iisse*.

Observe the compounds of **eo** : **ab-eo**, *I go away* ; **red-eo**, *I return*.

Some of these compounds of **eo**, e.g. **adeo**, *to approach*, and **ineo**, *to enter*, are used in the passive.

INDICATIVE.—*Present*, **adeor**, **adīris**, **adītur**, **adīmur**, **adimini**, **adeuntur**. *Imperfect*, **adibar**. *Future*, **adibor**. *Perfect*, **adītus sum**. *Pluperfect*, **adītus eram**. *Future Perfect*, **adītus ero**.

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Present*, **adear**. *Imperfect*, **adīrer**. *Perfect*, **adītus sim**. *Pluperfect*, **adītus essem**.

INFINITIVE.—*Present*, **adiri**. *Perfect*, **adītum esse**. *Past Participle*, **adītus**. *Gerundive*, **adeundus**.

9. **Cāpio**, *I take* (see p. 22).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. **cāpio**

cāpis

capit

Present.

P. **cāpimus**

capitis

capiunt

cāpīam

cāpīas, etc.

Imperfect.

cāpiebam, etc.

S. **cāpērem**

cāpēres

cāperet

P. **cāperemus**

cāperetis

cāperent

Future.

cāpīam

cāpies, etc.

Perfect.

cāpī, etc.

cēperim, etc.

Pluperfect.

cēperam, etc.

cēpīsem, etc.

Future Perfect.

cēpero, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

S. **cāpe**¹

P. **cāpīte**

} *take!*

INFINITIVE.

Present, **cāpēre**.

Perfect, **cēpisse**.

Future, **cāpturus esse**.

Present Participle, **cāpiens**.

Future Participle, **cāpturus**.

Gerund, **cāpiendi**, -**dō**, -**dum**.

Supines, **cāptum**, **cāptu**.

¹ **Facio** makes **fac**.

Capior, I am taken.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>S.</i> capior capēris capitur <i>P.</i> capimur capimini capiuntur	capiar, etc.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	capiebar, etc.	<i>S.</i> capērer capereris caperetur <i>P.</i> caperemur caperemini caperentur
<i>Future.</i>	capiar capiēris, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	captus sum, etc.	captus sim, etc.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	captus eram, etc.	captus essem, etc.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	captus ero, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

S. 2. capere } *be taken!*
P. 2. capimini }

INFINITIVE.

Present, capi. Perfect, captus esse.

Future, captum iri.

Perfect Participle, captus. Gerundive, capiendus.

Observe that **capio** drops *i* out only before another *i* (as in **capit**), a final *e* (as in **cape**), and *-ēr-* (as in **capere**).

ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

Words printed in *Italics* in the exercises are not to be translated into Latin.

Obs.—A figure after the word denotes the declension or conjugation to which the word belongs. m., f., n. stand respectively for masculine, feminine, neuter. i.e. stands for *id est*, that is. e.g. stands for *exempli gratia*, for instance. When proper names are not given they are the same in Latin as in English, and the declension is obvious: thus *Belgae* clearly belongs to the first declension, *Haedui* to the second.

Able: to be able, *posse*, p. 168.

about, when it means "concerning," *de*, with abl.

about to, sign of the future; about to die, *moriturus*.

absence: in my absence, *me absente* (i.e. I being absent).

accuse, *accūsō* (1).

admire, *admīrari*, deponent.

adopt: to adopt a resolution or plan, *consilium inire* (i.e. *eo*; for *eo* see pp. 173-5.)

advance, *prōgrēdior*, deponent; *progressus*, *progredi*, p. 22.

advise, give advice, *mōnēre* (2); I give you this one piece of advice, *id unum te moneo*; I advise you to

come, *moneo te ut venias*;

I advise you not to come, *moneo te ne venias*.

Aenēas, gen. *Aeneae* (1).

affair, *res* (5).

afraid, to be (of), *tīmēre* (2).

against, *contra*, with acc.

aid, *auxilium*; he came to my aid, *auxilio venit mihi*.

alarm, to, *terrēre*.

all, *omnis*, *omne*; all of us returned, *omnes rediimus* (we all returned).

allies, *sōcii* (plural).

I am allowed, *licet mihi* (i.e. it is allowed me).

alone, *sōlus* (*solius*).

already, *iam*.

always, *semper*.

ambassador, *lēgātus* (2).
amuse, *dēlecto* (1).
ancestors, *māiōres* (gen. *maiōrum*).
and, *et*.
angry, I am, or, I get angry (with you), (*tibi*) *īrascor*, *īrātus*, deponent (3).
another, *ālius*, -a, -ud.
answer: to answer, make or give answer, *respondēre*, *respondi*, *responsum* (2); I answer you, *tibi respondeo*.
anxious: I am anxious that, *hoc mihi curae est ut*.
any, any one, anything, see p. 57 and p. 83.
approach: the approach, *adventus* (4); to approach, *ādīre* (*ad-eo*; for *eo* see pp. 173-5). I approach the king, *ad rēgem adeo*.
arms, *arma* (*armorum*), neut. pl.
army, *exercitus* (4).
arrival, *adventus* (4); on Caesar's arrival, *adventu Caesaris*.
arrive at, *pervēnīre ad* with accus.
art, *ars* (*artis*), f.
as: "as" may be left out, a participle being used in the Latin; we saw him as he ran, *currentem vidimus*; as your king is captured the war is finished, *rege capto confectum est bellum*.
Asia, *Asia* (1).

ask (a question), *rōgare* (1); ask or ask for, *pēto*, *petivi*, and *petii* (3). I ask for help, *auxilium peto*; I asked (or put) him many questions, *multa eum rogavi*; I asked him to come, *rogavi eum ut veniret*.
asleep, to be, *dormīre* (4).
assist, *subvēnīre* (-*vēni*, -*ventum*) (4), with dative.
assistance: I come to your assistance, *tibi auxilio venio*.
at: at home, *dōmi*; at Rome *Romae*; at once, *statim*.
attack, *ādōrior*, deponent; *adortus*, *adoriri*.
audacious, *audax* (*audācis*).
aware: to be or become aware (of), *sentio*, *sensi*, *sensus* (4).
away: to be away, *abesse* (*absūm*); as Caius is away, *Gaio absente*.
Bad, *mālus*, comp. *pēior*, superl. *pessimū*.
baggage, *impēdimenta*, neut. plur (2).
barbarians, *barbāri* (2).
base, *turpis* (*turpis*).
battle, *praelium*.
bear: to bear, *ferre*, p. 171.
beautiful, *pulcher*, -*chra*, -*chrum*.
become, *fieri*, p. 173.
before, *ante*, prep. with accus.: adv. *antea*.

beg, or **beg for**, *oro* (1).
begin : I have begun, I began, *coepi*, p. 30.
believe, *crēdo*, *credīdi*, *credītum* (3) ; I believe you, *credo tibi* ; but, I believe that you did it, *credo te fecisse*.
besiege, *obsīdeo*, *obsēdi*, *obsessus* (2).
best, *optīmus*.
better, *mēlior*, *melius*.
bind, *vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctus* (4).
bird, *āvis* (*avis*), f.
blame, *culpo* (1).
book, *liber*, *libri*.
both, *et . . . and*, *et*.
boy, *puer* (*pueri*).
brave, *fortis*.
bravely, *fortiter* ; more bravely, *fortius*.
bravery, *virtus* (*virtutis*), f.
bridge, *pons* (*pontis*), m.
bring, *fēro*, p. 171.
Britons, *Britanni* (2).
brother, *frāter* (*fratris*).
build, *aedīfīco* (1).
burn, *incendo*, *incendi*, *incensus* (3).
but, *sēd*.
buy, *ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptus* (3).
by, by a person *a* and *ab* with the ablative ; by a thing, the ablative without *a* or *ab*.

Caesar, *Caesar* (*Caesāris*).
Caius, *Gaius*.

call, *vōco* (1).
camp, *castra* (2) ; plur. (because literally "tents").
can, I can, *possum*, p. 168 ; I cannot, *non possum* ; I can come, *venire possum*.
captive, *captivus*.
carry, *fēro*, p. 171 ; I carry on war, *bellum gēro* (3).
Carthage, *Carthāgo* (*Carthaginis*), f.
Carthaginian, *Carthaginien-sis* (3).
Catiline, *Cātilīna*.
cause, *causa*.
cavalry, *equitātus* (4).
certain, a certain one, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.
charge, *impētus* (4) ; to charge, *impetum facere*.
choose, *dēlēgo*, *dēlēgi*, *delectus* (3) ; I choose rather (I prefer), *mālo*, p. 170.
Cicero, *Cicēro* (*Cicerōnis*).
citizen, *civis* (*civis*).
city, *urbs* (*urbis*), f.
clever, *sāpiens* ; very clever, *sapientissimus*.
cold, *frīgus* (*frīgōris*), n.
come, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum* (4).
 It comes about, *fit* (from *fio*) ; that is how it comes about, *ita fit* ; I come back, *redeo*, *-ire*, *-ii* (*re + eo*, pp. 173-5).
command : he is in command of the city, *prae-est urbi* (*est*, he is ; *prae*, at the head of) ; he will command

- the cavalry, *equitatui prae-*
erit.
- companion**, *cōmes* (*comītis*).
- concerning**, *de*, with abl.
- condemn**, *condemnare* (1).
- conquer**, *vinco*, *vici*, *victus* (3).
- conqueror**, *victor* (*victōris*).
- consider**: I am considered good, *habeor bonus*.
- considerable**: a considerable sum of money, *aliquantum pecūniae*.
- consul**, *consul* (*consulis*).
- Corinth**, *Cōrinthus*, f.
- corn**, *frumentum* (2).
- corn**: I get corn, *frumento* (1).
- could**, *see can*.
- country**, as distinguished from the town, *rūs* (*rūris*), n.; to the country, *rus*; in the country, *rure*. One's native country, fatherland, *patria*.
- cross**, I cross, *transeo*, p. 173.
- custom**, *mōs* (*mōris*); in accordance with the custom, *more* (abl.)
- Danger**, *pēriculūm*; he is a danger to the city, *urbi periculo est*.
- dare**, *audeo*; the perfect, *ausus sum*, is deponent; he dare not go, *ire non audet*.
- dart**, *tēlum*.
- daughter**, *fīlia*.
- day**, *dies* (5), (masc. and fem. in sing., masc. only in plur.)
- day by day**, in *dies*; to-day, *hōdie*; at daybreak, *prima luce* (at the first light).
- dead**, *mortuus*.
- dear**, my country is dear to me! *patria est mihi amor!* (*amori*, dat. of *amor*, an object of affection); how dear, *quanto amor*.
- death**, *mors* (*mortis*), f.
- deceive**, *fallo*, *fefelli*, *falsus* (3); *decipio*, *decēpi*, *deceptus*, *decipere*.
- defeat**, to, *vinco*, *vici*, *victus* (3).
- defend**, *defendo*, *defendi*, *defensus* (3).
- delay**, *mōror*, deponent; *moratus* (1).
- deny**, *negō* (1).
- depart**, *ābeo* (*ab + eo*, pp. 173-5); *discedo*, *discessi* (3).
- desirous**, *cūpidus*.
- despise**, *contemno*, *contempsi*, *contemptus* (3).
- determine**, or determine on, *constituo*, *constitui*, *constitutus* (3); I determine to go, *constituo ire*.
- dictator**, *dictator* (3).
- did**, sign of perfect tense.
- die**, *mōrior*, *mortuus*, *mori*, p. 22; fut. pteple *mōriturus*.
- difficult**, *difficilis*, *difficile*.
- diligence**, *diligentia* (1).
- discover**, *repērio*, *repēri*, *repertus* (4).

do, *āgo, ēgi, actus* (3), or *fācio, fēcī, factus* (3); do you see? *vides-ne?*—do you not see? *nonne vides?*—you don't see (it), do you? *num vides?*—do not say this, *nōlī hoc dicere* (i.e. be unwilling to say this), or *ne hoc dixeris* (perf. subj.)

doctor, *mēdicus* (2).

dog, *cānis* (*canis*), m.

doubt, to, *dūbītare*; doubtful, *dūbius*; I don't doubt, or, it is not doubtful, *that* he did it, *non dubito*, or *non dubium est, quin fecerit*. There is no doubt = it is not doubtful.

drink, *bībo, bibi* (3).

Easily, *fācile*; more easily, *fācilis*.

easy, *fācilis*.

eat, *ēdo, ēdī, ēsum* (3).

eight, *octo*.

eleventh, *undēcīmus*.

encourage, *hortor* (1), deponent.

end, *finis* (*finis*), m.

endeavour, *cōnor* (1), deponent.

endure, *fēro*, p. 171; or *pātior, pāti, passus*, deponent, p. 22.

enemy, *hostis* (*hostis*), generally used in the plural; *hostis* means a public enemy, an enemy to the state. A private enemy, i.e. a person

one dislikes, *inimicus* (the opposite of *amicus*).

enough, *sātis*; enough wine, *satis vini*.

enter, *in-co* (4).

escape, *fūgio, fūgi, fūgere* (3), p. 22.

even: not even, *ne . . . quidem*. The important and emphatic word is put between *ne* and *quidem*. "I cannot even believe you" is, *Ne tibi quidem credere possum*.

evening: in the evening, *vespère* and *vespèri*.

ever, *unquam*; ever before, *unquam antea*.

everybody, **every one**, *omnes* (i.e. all men); **everything**, *omnia* (all things); **every day**, *cōtidie*.

excel, *praestare, praeſtiti, praeſtitum*; he excels you in valour, *tibi virtute praeſtat*.

exercise: to exercise, *exercēre*; to take exercise, *corpus exercēre*.

expect, *exspecto* (1).

eye, *ocūlus* (2).

Faithful, *fūdelis*.

fall, *cādo, cēcūdi* (3).

famous, *clārus*.

far, *prōcūl*.

farewell, *valēte* (imper. of *valeo*, I am well).

father, *pāter* (*patris*).

- favour** : to favour, *fāvēre*, *fāvi*, *fautum*, with dative.
fear (noun), *tīmor* (*tīmōris*), m.
fear, to, *tīmēre* (2); or *vērēri* (2), deponent.
feel, *sentio*, *sensi*, *sensum* (4).
few, a few, *pauci*.
field, *āger* (*agri*)
fifth, *quintus*.
fifty, *quīquaginta*.
fight, *pugnare* (1).
find, find out, *rēpērio*, *repēri*, *repertus* (4).
finish, *conficio*, *confēci*, *confectus* (3).
first, *prīmus*.
five, *quīque*; five hundred, *quīngenti*, -ae, -a.
flee, *fūgio*, *fūgi*, *fūgere* (3), p. 22.
fleet, *classis*, f.
flight, *fūga* (1); in flight, *fuga*.
flower, *flōs* (*flōris*), m.
fly, see **flee**.
follow, *sēquor*, deponent, *sēcūtus* (3).
food, *cibus* (*cibi*), m.
foolish, *stultus*.
foot of mountain, *mons imus*, the mountain where it is lowest.
for : he stayed for three days, *tres dies mansit*; it is not for me to speak (i.e. not my business), *non meum est loqui*.
forces, *cōpiae*.
forget, *obliviscor*, deponent, *oblītus* (3). I don't forget you, *non tui obliviscor*; I don't forget the occurrence, *rei* (or *rem*) *non obliviscor*.
found : I found, establish, *condo*, *condīdi*, *condītus* (3).
fourth, *quartus*.
free, *liber*, *libēra*, *liberum*.
free, to set free, *libērāre*.
friend, *āmīcus* (2).
friendly, it is; say, it is the way of a friend. See Section 33.
friendship, *āmīcītia*.
from, *a* and *ab*; *ab* necessarily before vowels. No preposition before the name of a town.
front, in front of, *pro*, with abl.
Garden, *hortus* (2).
gate, *porta* (1).
gather, *carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptus* (3).
Gaul, the country, *Gallia*; a Gaul, *Gallus*.
general, *impērātor* (*imperatoris*).
Geneva, *Genāva* (1).
German, *Germānus* (2).
get : I get back, *recipio* (3).
girl, *puella*.
give, *do*, *dēdi*, *dātus*, *dāre*; give back (return), *reddo*, *reddīdi*, *reddītus* (3); give

over, give up, *dēdo, dedīdi, deditus* (3).

glory, *glōria* (1).

go, *eo, ivi* or *ii, itum, ire*, pp. 173-5 ; go away, *abeo*, or *discedo, discessi, discessum* (3) ; go back, *redeo*.

god, *deus* (2), m.

gold, *aurum*.

good, *bōnus* (comp. *mēlior*, superl. *optīmus*).

grant, *concedo* (3).

great, *magnus* (*māior, maximus* or *summus*) ; **so great**, *tantus* ; **a great many**, *multi*.

Greek, *Graecus*.

guard : he left me to guard the city, *reliquit me praesidio* (for a protection) *urbi*.

Happen : that is how it happens, *ita fit* (from *fio*, perfect *factum est*).

harbour, *portus* (4).

harm, see **hurt**.

hate : I hate, *odi* (perfect with present meaning).

hateful : this is hateful to me, *hoc est odio mihi*.

hatred, *odium*.

have (possess), *habeo* ; or the verb *esse* may be used, as, I have a dog, *est mihi canis*, a dog belongs to me.

he, *is* (*eius*) or *ille*, but "he" may generally be omitted.

hear, *audio*.

heart, *animus* (2).

help, *auxilium* ; I **help**, *adiuvo, adiūvi, adiutus, adiuvere*.

here, *hic*.

herself, see **self**.

hill, *collis* (*collis*), m.

himself, see **self**.

hinder, *impedire* ; I did not hinder him from speaking, *non impediri quominus loqueretur*.

his, her (when the person meant is subject of the sentence), *suus* ; otherwise the genitive of *is, ea, id*, see pp. 51-2. But the word may generally be omitted in Latin.

home : (to) home, *dōmum* ; at home, *dōmi*.

honour (an honour), *hōnōr* (*hōnōris*), m. ; he is an honour to the city, *honor est urbi*.

hope, *spes* (5) ; I hope, *spēro* (1) ; I hope for peace, *pācem* (acc.) *spero* ; I hope to come, *spero me venturum*.

horse, *equus* (2).

horseman, *equus* (*equitis*).

hostage, *obses* (*obsidis*).

hour, *hōra*.

house, *dōmus* (4), f. *Domus* generally follows the fourth declension, except in the abl. sing. and the accus.

and gen. pl., in which it follows the second.

how: how does it come about? *qui fit*? For how much? *quanti*? How much money will you give? *quantum pecuniae dabis*? How great, how big, *quantus*.

hundred, *centum*.

hurt: to harm or do harm, *nocere* (dat., 2).

I, *ego* (*mei*).

idle, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.

if, *si*; if any (one), *si quis*; if any (thing), *si quid*; if any news, *si quid novi*; if I were unwilling, say, I being unwilling, in abl. abs.; if . . . not, *nisi*.

ignorant, *ignarus*.

impede, *impedio* (4).

importance: important, it is important (or, of importance) to Caesar, *Caesaris interest*; it is important to me, *mea interest*; it is of no importance, *nihil interest*; it is very important (of great importance), *multum interest*; of the greatest importance, *maxime interest*; how important is it? *quantum interest*? See Section 32.

in, *in* with abl.; but the ablative alone to express

time, e.g. in winter, *hieme*; in vain, *frustra* (adv.)

inform: I inform Caius, or give information to Caius (of the battle), *Gaium certiorum facio* (*de praelio*), i.e. I make Caius more certain; Caius has been informed, *Gaius factus est certior*.

inhabit, *incolere*, *incolui*, *incoltus* (3).

inquire, *quaero*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitus* (3); I inquire of somebody, *quaero ex aliquo*.

inquiry: to make the same inquiry (of), *idem quaerere* (*ex*).

into, *in*, with accus.

island, *insula*, f.

Italy, *Italia*.

Judge, *iudex* (*iudicis*).

judgment: in my judgment, say, I being judge, in abl. abs.

justice, *iustitia*.

Kill, *interficio*, *interfeci*, *interfectus* (3).

king, *rex* (*regis*).

know, *scio*, *scivi* and *scii*, *scitum*; or *novi*, a perfect with present meaning; or *cognosco*, *cognovi*, *cognitus* (3). To know Balbus, *Balbus novisse*; to know the way, *viam novisse*; these things being known,

his rebus cognitis ; I do not know, *nescio*. [*Novisse* then is to know one thing or person from another by distinguishing marks ; *scire*, to know something by learning the subject ; *cognoscere*, to get information about something.]

Land, *terra* (1).

large, *magnus* (*maior*, *maximus*).

laugh, *rideo*, *rīsi*, *rīsum* (2).

lazy, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.

lead, *dūco*, *dūxi*, *ductus* (3) ; to lead a life, *vītam āgēre* (*ago*, *ēgi*, *actus*) (3).

leader, *dux* (*dūcis*) ; under your leadership, *say*, you being leader, *abl. abs.*

learn, *disco*, *didici* (3) ; having learned these facts, *his rebus cognitis* ; a **learned man**, *vir doctus* (*i.e.* a man who has been taught).

leave, *relinquere*, *reliqui*, *relictus*.

legion, *lēgio* (*legiōnis*), *f.*

less, *minor* ; less corn, *minus frumenti*.

lest, *ne*, with subjunctive following.

letter, *epistula* (1).

let us rule, *regamus* (*subj.*)

life, *vita* (1).

like, *similis*, *-e*, with *gen.* of person, *gen.* or *dative* of thing ; *superl.* *simillimus*.

little, *parvus*.

live, *vivo*, *vixi*, *victus* (3).

London, *Londinium*.

long, *longus* ; for a long time (or while), *diu*, *adv.* (*comp.* *diutius*).

look for, *quaerere*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*.

lose, *amitto*, *amisi*, *amissum* (3).

love, *amor* (*amoris*), *m.* I love, *amo* (1).

Maintain : I maintain my opinion, *maŋeo in eādem sententia*.

make, *fācio*, *fēci*, *factus*, *facere*, *p. 22*. They made Caius general, *Gaium imperatorem fecerunt* ; he was made general, *imperator factus est*.

man : *homo* (*hominis*), *vīr* (*virī*). But "man" may often be left out, the use of the masculine gender being enough ; "many men" can be translated by *multi* ; the man who, *is qui* ; a young man, *iuvēnis* ; an old man, *sēnex* (*senis*). [*Homo* means a human being, and includes women and children ; *vir* is a full-grown man, not a woman or child.]

manners, *mōres* (*morum*), plural of *mos*, *m.*

- many**, *multi*; a great many boys, *multi pueri*.
- march**, a, *iter* (*itineris*), n.; **march**, I, *iter facio* (I make a journey).
- master**, *i.e.* owner, *dōmīnus* (2); a teacher, *māgister* (*magistrī*).
- matter**, *res* (5). It does not matter to me, *nihil intērest meā*; it matters to the king, *intērest rēgis*; what does it matter? *quid intērest?*
- may**: I may (*i.e.* I am allowed, leave is given me), *licet mihi*.
- memory**, *memoria*.
- messenger**, *nuntius* (2).
- middle**, midst: in the middle of the sea, *in mēdio mari*.
- midnight**: at midnight, *mēdia nocte*.
- mile**, a, *mille passus* (4), *i.e.* a thousand paces; three miles, *tria mīlia passuum*.
- mind**, *ānīmus* (2).
- miserable**, *mīser*, *mīsera*, *miserum*; miserable man that I am! *me miserum!*
- money**, *pecūnia* (1); sum of money, *pecunia*.
- more**, *plūs* (*plūris*); more wine, *plus vīni*.
- morning**, in the, *māne*.
- morrow**: to-morrow, *māne*, indeclinable.
- mother**, *māter* (*matris*).
- mountain**, *mons* (*montis*), m.
- move**, *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtus* (2).
- much**, *multus*; much wine, *multum vīni*; he suffered much, *multa passus est*.
- murder**, *occīdo*, *occīdi*, *occisus* (3).
- must**: use the gerundive: I must go, *eundum est mihi*.
- my**, *meus*; voc. masc. *mī*.
- myself** (1), reflexively, *me*; I give myself up, *me dedo*; (2), emphatically, *ipse*; I myself did it, *ipse feci*.
- Name**, *nōmen* (*nōmīnis*); to name, *nōmīnāre*.
- Naples**, *Neapōlis* (*Neapolis*).
- neither** . . . **nor**, *nēquē* . . . *nēquē*.
- never**, *nunquam*.
- news**: (a) if he heard any news, *si quid nōvī audivit*; what news is there? *quid novī est?* (b) bring news, *nuntiare* (1).
- night**, *nox* (*noctis*), f.; by night, *nocte*; at midnight, *mēdia nocte*.
- ninth**, *nōnus*.
- no**: no money, *nihil pecuniae* (nothing of money); no men, *nulli viri*.
- nobody**, no one, none, *nēmō* (acc. *nemīnem*, dat. *nemīni*; for other cases use *nullus*, gen. *nullius*).
- nor**, *nēc*, *nēquē*.
- not**, *nōn*. He has not come,

has he? *num venit?* (answer, No). — Has he not come? *nonne venit?* (answer, Yes). — Do not say it, *noli dicere*, or *ne dixeris* (pf. subj.)

nothing, *nihil*, n. indeclinable; nothing good, *nihil boni*; nothing sad, *nihil triste*.

notice, *sentio, sensi, sensus* (4).

now, *nunc*.

number, *num̄erus* (2).

Obey, *pārere* (2) with dative.

object: have or make objections, *recūsare* (1); I won't object to your making a speech, *non recusabo quominus orationem habeas*.

of, meaning "about," *de* with abl.

often, *saepe*.

old man, *sēnex* (*senis*).

on, *in* with acc. when motion is implied; with abl. when it is not; on that day, *illo die*; on this matter, *de hac re*.

once, at, *statim*.

one, *unus* (gen. *unūs*).

only, *solum*.

open: to open, *aperio, aperui, apertus* (4).

opinion, *sententia* (1).

opportunity, *occāsio* (*occasionis*), f.

orator, *orātor* (*oratoris*).

order: I order, *iūbeo, iussi,*

iussus (2); by order, *iussu*. To give orders, *imp̄rāre*; he gave the soldier this order, *hoc militi imperavit*; he gave orders to the soldiers to advance, *militibus imperavit ut progredirentur*. **in order that**, *ut* with subjunctive.

ornament, *ornāmentum*; it is an ornament to the city, *ornamento est urbi*.

other, *ālius, -a, -ud*; the other, *alter, -era, -erum* (gen. *alterius*).

others, *ālii*; but the others, *cēteri*.

ought, *oportet* (2), and *dēbeo* (2); I ought to go, *oportet me ire*, or *debeo ire*. The gerundive may also be used: *eundum est mihi*.

our, *noster*; our men, our soldiers, *nostri* (*militēs* understood).

ourselves: we ourselves have come, *ipsi venimus*.

out of, *e, ex*, with abl. (*ex* before vowels).

owe, *dēbeo*.

Pain, *dōlor* (*doloris*).

Paris, *Lutētia* (1).

part, *pars* (*partis*), f.

pay, *solvo, solvi, sōlūtus* (3).

peace, *pax* (*pācis*), f.

perceive, *intellēgo, intellexi, intellectum* (3).

- permit**, *pātor*, deponent ;
perf. *passus sum* ; inf. *pati*
(3), p. 22.
- persuade**, *persuādere* (-*suasi*,
-*suasum*), dat. (a) I per-
suaded Caius to come, *per-*
suasi Gaio ut veniret ; but
(b) I persuaded Caius that
you had come, *persuasi Gaio*
te venisse.
- philosopher**, *philōsōphus* (2).
- pick**, *carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptus* (3).
- place**, *a*, *lōcus*, m., pl. *loci*,
n. (2).
- plan**, *consilium*.
- pleasure**, *vōluptas* (*vōluptā-*
tis), f.
- poem**, *poēma* (*poematis*), n.
- poet**, *poēta* (1).
- poor**, *pauper* (*paupēris*).
- post**, *pōno*, *pōsui*, *pōsitus* (3).
- praise**, *laudo* (1).
- pray**, *orāre* ; I pray you to
depart, *oro te ut abeas*.
- prefer**, *mālo* (see p. 170).
- prepare**, *pārāre*.
- present**, to be, *ad-sum*, *ad-*
esse ; see *esse*, p. 166.
- present**, *a*, *dōnum* ; he gives
me this as a present, *hoc*
mihi dono dat.
- pretend**, *simūlo* (1) ; I pre-
tended to know, *simulavi*
me scire.
- prevent**, *impēdio* (4) ; nothing
prevented me from coming,
nihil impediit quominus
venirem.
- prisoner**, *captivus* (2).
- promise**, *prōmitto*, *promisi*,
promissum (3) ; he promises
to come, *promittit se ven-*
turum esse.
- property** : my property, *mea*
(neut. pl.) or *res meae*.
- protection**, *praesidium* ; he
is a protection to me, *mihi*
est praesidio.
- purpose** : for the purpose of,
causā, with gerund or ger-
undive.
- put**, or put down, *pōno*, *pōsui*,
pōsitus ; to put to death,
interficere (*interficio*, *inter-*
feci, *interfectus*).
- Queen**, *regīna* (1).
- questions** : see **ask**.
- quickly**, *cēlērīter* (superl.
celerrīme).
- Rain** : it rains, *pluit* (3).
- raise**, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublatus* (3).
- rather** : I would rather (*i.e.*
I prefer), *mālo*, p. 170 ; I
would rather go alone, *malo*
ire solus ; I would rather
not, *nōlo*, p. 169.
- reach** (the land), *cāpio*, *cēpi*,
captus, *cāpēre*, p. 175.
- read**, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectus* (3).
- ready**, *pārātus*.
- reason**, *causa* (1) ; what
reason is there why I should
not come ? *quid causae est*
quā veniam ?

receive, *accipio*, *accēpi*, *acceptus*, *accēpere*, p. 22.

rejoice, *gaudēre*, *gāvīsus sum* (deponent in the perfect); I rejoice at this, *hoc gaudeo*.

remain, *māneo*, *mansi*, *mansum* (2).

remember, *memoriā tēnēre* (i.e. to hold in the memory); *mēmīni*, perfect with present meaning; imperative, *memento*; governing genitive of person, *memini Caesaris*, I remember Caesar; gen. or acc. of thing, *memini rem* or *rei*.

remove, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublātus* (3).

resolution, *consilium*.

rest, the rest, *cēteri*.

restore (i.e. to give back), *reddo*, *reddidi*, *redditum* (3).

retain, *tēneo*, *tenui*, *tentus* (2).

return: I go back, *rēdeo*, *redivi* and *redii*, *reditum* (4), p. 175; I give back, *reddo*, *reddidi*, *redditus* (3).

reward, *praemium*.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*.

rich, *dīves* (*divītis*); superl. *divitissimus*.

river, *flūmen* (*flumīnis*), n.

Roman, *Rōmānus*.

Rome, *Rōma*.

route, *iter* (*itīnērīs*), n.

ruin, *perdo*, *perdidi*, *perditum* (3).

rule, *rēgo*, *rexī*, *rectus* (3).

run, *curro*, *cucurri*, *cursum* (3).

Sad, *tristis*.

safety, *sālus* (*salūtis*), f.

sail, *nāvigo* (1).

sailor, *nauta* (1).

sake: for the sake, *causā*.

same, *īdem*, *eudem*, *īdem*.

save, *conservare* (1).

say, *dico*, *dixi*, *dictus* (3); they say that I am king, *dicunt me esse regem*; but, it is said that I am king, *dicor esse rex* (I am said to be king): he said that he was not consul, *negavit se esse consulem* (he denied that he was consul).

Scipio, *Scīpio* (*Scipiōnis*).

sea, *māre* (*maris*), n.

see, *video*, *vīdi*, *visus*.

seek, *pēto*,¹ *petivi* and *peti*, *petitus* (3); *quaero*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitus* (3).

seem, *videor*, *vīsus* (2); he seems (to be) good, *videtur (esse) bonus*.

seize, *occūpo* (1).

self: himself, herself, themselves, used reflexively, *se* (*sui*, *sibi*); used for emphasis, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. Examples—1, reflexive: he hurt himself, *nocuit sibi*;

¹ *Peto* means I make for, go after, try to obtain; *quaero*, I look about for, search for.

2, emphatic: he himself said it, *ipse dixit*, see p. 51.
sell, *vendo, vendidi, venditus* (3).
send, *mitto, mīsi, missus* (3).
set out,¹ *proficiscor* (3), deponent, *profectus*; **I set fire to**, *incendo, incendi, incensus* (3); **I set sail**, *navem solvo* (*solvēre, solvi, solūtus*, 3), i.e. I untie my boat.
settle, *constituo, constitui, constitutus* (3).
she, *illa*; but the word may generally be omitted.
ship, *nāvis* (*navis*), f.; a ship of war, *navis longa*.
shocking, *foedus, -a, -um*; shocking to see, *foedus visū* (supine).
shore, *litus* (*litōris*), n.
short, *brēvis, breve*.
should: if it means "ought," use the gerundive.
shout, a, *clāmōr* (*clamōris*), m.; to shout, *clāmāre*.
Sicily, *Sicīlia*.
silent: I am silent, keep silence, *taceo* (2).
sister, *sōror* (*sorōris*).
slave, *servus* (2).
slay, *interficio, -fēci, -fectus, ficere*, p. 22.
sleep, *dormio* (4).
small, *parvus*.

¹ I set out for Gaul, *in Galliam proficiscor*; I set out for Rome, *Romam proficiscor* (leave out the preposition before the name of a town).

so, *tam, ita*; so great, so big, *tantus*; so many, *tot*.

soldier, *mīles* (*mīlitis*).

some: (1) Use *alii* for "some" if a second *alii* occurs in the sentence meaning "others"; as *alii manebant, alii abibant*, some stayed, others went away. (2) Otherwise the word for "some," "some one," "something," is *aliquis, aliqua, aliquid* (but *aliqui, aliquae, aliquod*, if a substantive agrees with it: thus, *aliqui deus nobis subvenit*, some god has helped us).—Note especially the use of *aliquid* with a partitive genitive: something good, *aliquid boni*; some reward, *aliquid praemii*; some food, *aliquid cibi*. On the other hand, write *aliquid triste* for something sad; adjectives which make genitive in *-is* are not used in the partitive genitive.

some one, *aliquis*: see **some**.

something, *aliquid*: see **some**.

son, *filius* (2).

song, *carmen* (*carmīnis*), n.

soon, *mox*.

spare, *parco, peperci, parsum* (3), with dative.

speak, *loquor* (3), deponent, *locutus*.

speech, *oratio* (*orationis*), f. ;
make or deliver a speech,
orationem habeo (2).

spring, *vēr* (*veris*), n.

stand, *sto*, *stēti*, *statum* (1) ;
to stand round, *circumstare*.

start : see **set out**.

state, *civitas* (*civitātis*), f.

stay, *māneo*, *mansi*, *mansum*
(2).

stone, *lāpis* (*lapīdis*), m.

strategy, *consilium*.

such, *tālis*, *tale* ; of such a kind,
eiūsmodi ; such great, *tantus*.

suffer, *pātior*, dep., *pāti*, *pas-*
sus, see p. 22.

suffering, *dōlor* (*dolōris*), m.

suitable, *īdōneus*.

surely : use *num* or *nonne*,
according to the sense.

surpass, *praestāre*, *praestīti*,
praestitum ; to surpass me,
praestare mihi.

surrender, to (themselves),
se dēdēre, *dedīdi*, *dedītus* (3),
i.e. to give themselves up.

sweet, *dulcis*, *dulce*.

Table, *mensa* (1).

take, or take up, *cāpio*, *cēpi*,
captus, *capēre*, see p. 175.

talk, I, *lōquor* (3), deponent,
lōcūtus.

task, *opus* (*opēris*), n.

teach, *dōceo*, *docui*, *doctus* (2).

tell, *i.e.* I give some informa-
tion (to you), *dīco* (*tibi*),
dixi, *dictus* (3), imperative,

dic ; he told me that he
was well, *dixit mihi se*
valere ; tell me who it is,
dic mihi quis sit.

temple, *templum*.

ten, *dēcem*.

tenth, *dēcīmus*.

territory, *agri* or *fīnes*, m.

than, *quam*.¹

that : if "that" is a pro-
noun (*e.g.* that man) it is
translated by *ille*. If
"that" means "in order
that," *ut* with the subjun-
ctive is used ; but "that
not" in this sense is *ne*.
"So that" is also *ut* ; "so
that not," *ut non*. After
verbs of saying, believing,
hoping, etc., "that" is not
translated, but the accusa-
tive with infinitive used.

theft, *furtum* (2).

their, *suus* (reflexive). See
pp. 51-2.

themselves (used reflex-
ively), *se*. See **self**, and
pp. 51-2.

then, *tum*.

there, *ibi*.

thing, *res* (5), f. The word
"things" will often be left
untranslated : for instance,

¹ Remember that *quam* is not a pre-
position : he is wiser than Balbus,
sapientior est quam Balbus (not *Balbus*).
In a negative sentence *quam* can be
omitted and the ablative used : he is
not wiser than Balbus, *non sapientior*
est Balbo.

- all things (everything),
omnia; the things which,
ea quae.
- think**, *pūto* (1); *crēdo*, *credūdi*,
credītum (3).
- third**, *tertius*.
- this**, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.
- three**, *tres*, *tria*.
- throw**, *iūcio*, *iēcī*, *iactus*,
iacerē, p. 22.
- till**, *dum* with subj.
- time**, *tempus* (*tempōris*), n.; in
time, *tempore*.
- timid**, *tīmīdus*.
- to**: to a place (other than a
name of a town), *ad* or *in*
with acc.; to the city, *ad*
urbem; to Rome, *Romam*;
he came to me, *ad me venit*;
to (meaning in order to),
ut; I came to see, *veni ut*
viderem.
- to-day**, *hōdie*.
- to-morrow**, *crās*.
- top**: use *summus*; at the top
of the oak, *summa quercu* (*i.e.*
where the oak is highest).
- town**, *oppīdum*; *urbs* (*urbis*), f.
- traveller**, *viātor* (*viātoris*).
- treason**, *proditio* (*proditionis*),
f.; I accuse you of treason,
accuso te proditiōis.
- tree**, *arbor* (*arbōris*), f.
- tribe**, *gens* (*gentis*), f.
- Troy**, *Troia* (1).
- true**, *vērus*.
- try**, *cōnor* (1), deponent; I
try to go, *conor ire*.
- turn** (transitive), *verto*, *verti*,
versus (3); they turn (*in*-
transitive), *se vertunt*.
- twenty**, *vīginti*, indeclinable.
- two**, *duo*.
- two hundred**, *dūcenti*, -ae,
-a.
- Understand**, *intellēgo*, *intel*-
lexi, *intellectus* (3).
- unless**, *nīsī* (*i.e.* if . . . not).
- until**, *dum* with subj.
- unwilling**, I am, *nolo*, p. 169;
unwilling, *invitus*; since, or
if, I am unwilling, *me in*-
vito.
- unwillingly**: use the adj.;
I did it unwillingly, *invitus*
fēci.
- urge**, *hortari*, deponent; I
urge you to depart, *hortor*
te ut abeas.
- useful**, *ūtilis*, *utile*.
- useless**, *inūtilis*.
- Vainly, in vain**, *frustrā*.
- valour**, *virtūs* (*virtūtis*), f.
- verse**, *versus* (4), m.
- very**, use superl.
- very well**, *optīme*.
- victory**, *victōria*.
- Virgil**, *Vergilius*.
- virtue**, *virtūs* (*virtūtis*), f.
- Wage**, *gero*, *gessi*, *gestus* (3).
- wait**, *expecto* (1).
- want**, *i.e.* to wish, *volo*; not
to want, *nolo*.

war, *bellum*; a ship of war, *navis longa*; I carry on war, *bellum gero*.

warn, *mōneo* (2).

waste, *perdo, perdidī, perditum* (3).

water, *āqua* (1).

wave, *fluctus* (4).

weather, *tempestas* (*tempes-tātis*), f.

well: to be well, *vālēre* (2); to be very well, *optīmē vālēre*.

what? *quid?* *Quid dixit?*

What did he say? *Rogo quid dixerit*, I ask what he said.—“What” with

a substantive, *qui, quae, quod* (in questions direct or indirect). *Qui poeta?* what

poet? *Quae femina?* what woman?—What (= that

which), *id quod* or *ea quae*. I did what you ordered,

feci ea quae iussisti: see note on pp. 49-50.

when is either (1) interrogative or (2) relative: (1)

Interrogative (= at what time? or, on what occasion?), *ubi* or *quando*.

When did you come? *ubi* (or *quando*) *venisti?* I ask

when you came, *rogo ubi* (or *quando*) *veneris*. (2)

Relative (= at the time when), *cum*. When you

come I rejoice, *cum tu venis gaudeo*. Instead of *cum* a

participle may often be used; instead of *cum tu venis* we might have *te*

veniente. N.B.—*Cum* is not to be used before Exercise 93.

whence, where from, *unde*.

where (= in which place), *ubi* (both interrogative and

relative).

whether, *num.* *Rogavi num valeret*, I asked whether he

was well. “Whether” is used only in indirect ques-

tions in English, therefore use the subj. in Latin.

which? *quis?*—which (of two)? *uter? utra, utrum*

(gen. *utrius*)—which (relative), *qui*: see **who**.

while, *dum* with Indic. Present: see p. 106.

who: (1) relative, *qui, quae, quod*; (2) interroga-

tive, *who? quis?*¹ Direct question: *quis fecit?* who

did it? Indirect question: *rogo quis fecerit*, I ask who

did it.

whole, *tōtus* (*totius*).

why? *cur?* why did you do it? *cur fecisti?* tell me why you

did it, *dic mihi cur feceris*.

wicked, *mālus* or (the superlative) *pessimus*.

will: against my will, use *invitus*, unwilling.

¹ Nom. *Quis, Quid*; Acc. *Quem, Quam, Quid*. In other cases like *qui, quae, quod*.

willing : I am willing, <i>volo</i> .	without , use <i>quin</i> : see Section 50.
wind , <i>ventus</i> (2).	wood , <i>silva</i> (1).
window , <i>fēnēstra</i> (1).	word , <i>verbum</i> .
wine , <i>vīnum</i> .	work , <i>opus</i> (<i>opēris</i>), n.
winter , <i>hiems</i> (<i>hiēmis</i>), f. ; to pass the winter, <i>hiēmare</i> .	worse , <i>pēior</i> (<i>peiōris</i>).
wisdom , <i>sāpientia</i> (1).	worthy , <i>dignus</i> ; worthy of praise, <i>dignus laude</i> (abl.)
wise , <i>sāpiens</i> (<i>sapientis</i>) ; it is wise, <i>sapientis est</i> (it is the way of a wise man), see Section 33.	wound , to, <i>vulnērāre</i> .
wish , <i>volo</i> , p. 169 ; I do not wish, <i>nōlo</i> , p. 169.	write , <i>scribo</i> , <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scriptus</i> (3).
with : when it means "along with," <i>cum</i> with abl. ; with me, <i>mecum</i> , not <i>cum me</i> ; so <i>tecum</i> , <i>secum</i> , <i>nobiscum</i> , <i>vobiscum</i> .	Year , <i>annus</i> (2).
	yesterday , <i>hēri</i> .
	you , <i>tu</i> ; pl. <i>vōs</i> .
	your , <i>tuus</i> , <i>vester</i> .
	yourself : you did it by yourself, or, you yourself did it, <i>ipse fecisti</i> .

THE END

WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

GRAMMAR.

First Latin Grammar. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

An Elementary Latin Grammar. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., and Professor A. S. WILKINS, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

School Latin Grammar. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 5s.

Exercises on Latin Syntax and Idiom. Arranged with reference to Roby's School Latin Grammar. By E. B. ENGLAND, Litt.D. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net.

Latin Grammar. By Professor B. L. GILDERSLEEVE and GONZALEZ LODGE. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

A Grammar of the Latin Language, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Part I. Sounds, Inflections, Word-formation, Appendices. Crown 8vo. 9s. Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, etc. 10s. 6d.

TRANSLATION.

Macmillan's Latin Reader. A Latin Reader for the Lower Forms in Schools. By H. J. HARDY, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Exercises in Unseen Translation in Latin. By the Same. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Latin Passages for Translation. For the use of Higher Forms in Schools and of Students working for Pass Degrees. Selected by M. ALFORD. Globe 8vo. 3s.

PROSE COMPOSITION.

Macmillan's Latin Course :—

FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. New and Enlarged Edition. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THIRD PART. By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.

Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course :—

FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.

SECOND PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.

The Third Part of the **LATIN COURSE** is also intended to form the concluding volume of the **SHORTER LATIN COURSE**.

Latin Accidence and Exercises, arranged for Beginners. By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Short Exercises in Latin Prose Composition and Examination Papers in Latin Grammar. By Rev. H. BELCHER, LL.D.

PART I. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.

PART II. On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including Exercises in Latin Idioms, etc. Pott 8vo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. Pott 8vo. 3s. net.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

PROSE COMPOSITION—*continued.*

- Sermo Latinus.** A Short Guide to Latin Prose Composition. By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY to "Selected Passages." Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.
- First Steps to Latin Prose Composition.** By Rev. G. RUST, M.A. Pott 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. By W. M. YATES. Pott 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.
- Latin Prose after the best Authors: Cæsarian Prose.** By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.
- Latin Prose Exercises based upon Cæsar's Gallic War.** With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.
- Hints towards Latin Prose Composition.** By A. W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.
- Passages for Translation into Latin Prose.** Edited with Notes and References to the above. By the Same. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.
- Latin Phrase Book.** By C. MEISSNER. Translated by H. W. AUDEN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

VERSE COMPOSITION.

- Latin Elegiacs and Prosody Rhymes for Beginners.** By C. H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- A First Latin Verse Book.** By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. net.
- An Introduction to Latin Elegiac Verse Composition.** By J. H. LUPTON, Sur-Master of St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY TO PART II. (XXV.-C.). Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d. net.
- An Introduction to Latin Lyric Verse Composition.** By the Same. Globe 8vo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d. net.
- Exercises in Latin Verse of Various Kinds.** By Rev. G. PRESTON. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. Globe 8vo. 5s. net.

DICTIONARIES, etc.

- Macmillan's Elementary Latin-English Dictionary.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- English-Latin and Latin-English Dictionaries.** By Prof. C. D. YONGE. Each sold separately, 3s. 6d.; or complete, 7s. 6d.
- The Student's Companion to Latin Authors.** By GEORGE MIDDLETON, M.A., and THOMAS R. MILLS, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- A Short Manual of Comparative Philology for Classical Students.** By P. GILES, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 14s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.



LaL.Gr
C7713ma.2

181942
Cook, Alfred Marshall and Pantin, W.E.P.
Macmillan's shorter Latin course.
Vol.2.

University of Toronto Library

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

